





Name : ....

School : ....

Grade : ....

Class : ....

Teacher's name : ....



Theme (3) My society

Students exploring!

Go explore!

استكشِف!

Unit 5

In this unit, I will ....

- read and understand the use of pronouns in texts.
- understand and use phrasal verbs.
- listen for specific details.
- ask for further details in conversations.
- guess the meaning of words from context.
- understand and use the present simple passive.
- write a simple biography using sequencing words.
- understand the moral of a story.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Words related to exploring:** ambitious, avalanche, base camp, navigate, fascinated by, sailors, astronomy, navigator, peninsula, break a record, hold a record, banker, crutch, motorbike, fins, hold (your) breath, inspire, follow (your) dreams **Words related to space exploration:** attached, course, marathon, mission, model, spaceship, spacesuit, cleaning wipe
Language	**Phrasal verbs:** I had to fill in a form. / The taxi dropped us off at the airport. **Present simple passive:** Their sleeping bags are attached to the walls.
Reading	A website; a blog; factual articles; a traditional story with a moral
Writing	Using sequencers to organize ideas in a biography
Speaking	Asking for further information
Listening	A radio interview
Life skills	**Resilience:** the determination of explorers in achieving their goals
Values	**Appreciation of science and nature**
Issues and challenges	**Environmental responsibility**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**History:** the first Arab seaman

Contents

Lesson 1 Ahmad Ibn Majid



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


sailor
بَحّار


seaman
بَحّار - ملاح


navigator
ملاح - رُبان


navigate
يتنقل في - يُبحِر


compass
بوصلة


was fascinated by
كان مغرمًا بـ


astronomy
الفلك - علم الفلك


Arabian Peninsula
شبه الجزيرة العربية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

studies	دراسات	**intelligent**	ذكي
explore	يستكشف	**important**	هام - مهم
explorer	مستكشف	**languages**	لغات
traveler	مسافر	**route**	طريق - مسار
seas	بِحار	**information**	معلومات
oceans	محيطات	**type**	نمط - نوع
poems	قصائد شِعرية	**master**	رئيسي - أساسي

winds	رياح	**improve**	يُحَسِن
monsoons	رياح موسمية - أمطار موسمية	**design (n)**	تصميم
stars	نجوم	**reliable**	موثوق به - جدير بالثقة
planets	كواكب	**one side**	جانب واحد
known (adj)	معروف - مشهور	**safely**	بأمان
famous	مشهور	**humans**	البشر - الإنسان

Prepositions

except for	ما عدا - باستثناء	at the age of	في عُمْر ....
interested in	مهتم بـ - مغرم بـ	at night	في الليل
with Ibn Majid's help	بمساعدة ابن ماجد	He went on his first journey.	قام بأولى رحلاته.

Sentences & Expressions

He was born in 1432.	وُلِد عام 1432.	over the years	بمرور السنين
their own ships	سُفنهم الخاصة	for hundreds of years	لمئات السنين
across the world	حول العالم	sailed the Red Sea	أبحرا عبر البحر الأحمر
helped sailors to find their way	ساعد البحارة على أن يعرفوا مسارهم	Indian Ocean	المحيط الهندي
a piece of land	قطعة من الأرض	East Africa	شرق أفريقيا

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

navigator	: a person who can find their way at sea
astronomy	: the study of everything in space - the planets and the stars
sailors	: people who work on a ship or boat
peninsula	: a piece of land with sea all around it, except for one side
fascinated	: very interested in
navigate	: to find your way at sea
explore	: to try to find out things, and ask questions, even when we already have everything we need

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
sail	يبحر	sailed	sailed
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
listen	يستمع	listened	listened
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted	wanted
help	يساعد	helped	helped
work better	تعمل بشكل أفضل	worked better	worked better
live	يعيش	lived	lived
love	يحب	loved	loved
like	يحب	liked	liked
describe	يصف	described	described
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
improve	يُحَسِن	improved	improved
navigate	يتنقل في - يُبحِر	navigated	navigated
study	يَدرس	studied	studied
refer	يشير	referred	referred

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
have	يملك - يمتلك	had	had
find	يجد	found	found
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made
mean	يعني	meant	meant

Present		Past	PP
get older	يكبُر	got older	got older
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
know	يعرف	knew	known
bear	تلِد	bore	born
go	يذهب	went	gone
become	يصبح	became	become
see	يرى	saw	seen
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Humans have always explored. Exploring means to try to find out things, and ask questions, even when we already have everything we need!

لطالما اهتم البشر بالاستكشاف. الاستكشاف يعني محاولة اكتشاف الأشياء وطرح الأسئلة، حتى عندما يكون لدينا كل ما نحتاجه بالفعل!





Famous navigators






Ahmad Ibn Majid

Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid? He is the person who made it easier for us to travel on ❶ the sea today. Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman ❷, and he learned how to navigate ❸ the seas. "Navigate" means "to find your way around".



Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago.

He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman.

❶ نسافر في - نسافر عبر
❷ بحّار
❸ يُبحر

As a child, he was fascinated by ❹ the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing ❺ from his father and grandfather, who were great sailors ❻. They also had their own ships. Before Ibn Majid was born, his dad and grandfather sailed ❼ the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean. Ibn Majid wanted to explore ❽ the seas and oceans, too. At the young age of seven, he went on his first journey ❾ on the sea.

Ibn Majid was a very intelligent ❿ man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and astronomy ⓫. Astronomy was important because the stars at night helped sailors to find their way. Ibn Majid's studies helped him understand the winds, the monsoons ⓬, and the stars in the sky.

As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master navigator ⓭. He used a compass ⓮, but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved ⓯ the design. It was then more reliable ⓰ for sailors to use.



Over the years, Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew. Some of his books had information about routes ⓱ to different places, and some described the history of sailing. They helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula ⓲ to India, East Africa ⓳, and other places. He even wrote poems ⓴!

Across the world, Ahmad Ibn Majid is still famous. His books have helped many sailors for hundreds of years. With Ibn Majid's help, we can all travel safely on the seas.

❹ مفتون بـ - مُوَلَع بـ
❺ الإبحار
❻ بحّارة
❼ أبحرا في - أبحرا عبر
❽ يستكشف
❾ رحلة
❿ ذكي
⓫ علم الفلك
⓬ الرياح الموسمية - الأمطار الموسمية
⓭ ملّاح
⓮ بوصلة
⓯ طوّر - حسّن
⓰ موثوق
⓱ طُرُق - مسارات
⓲ شبه الجزيرة العربية
⓳ شرق أفريقيا
⓴ قصائد



Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sailors - navigate - fascinated - ships - seaman

Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child, he was ❶ .... by the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great ❷ .... They also had their own ships. Ibn Majid was the first Arab ❸ ...., and he learned how to ❹ .... the seas.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

journey - Ocean - navigator - explore - sailed

Before Ibn Majid was born, his dad and grandfather ❶ .... the Red Sea and the Indian ❷ .... Ibn Majid wanted to ❸ .... the seas and oceans, too. At the young age of seven, he went on his first ❹ .... on the sea.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

compass - travel - astronomy - describing - born

Teacher : Hello, Norhan. Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid?

Norhan : No, teacher. Who's he?

Teacher : He is the person who made it easier for us to ❶ .... on the sea today.

Norhan : When was he ❷ .... ?

Teacher : He was born in 1432 in what is now Oman.

Norhan : What were his studies?

Teacher : He studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and ❸ ....

Norhan : Did he write any books?

Teacher : Yes, he did. Ibn Majid wrote 38 books ❹ .... what he knew.

Norhan : What a great man!

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. He was the first Arab seaman, and he learned how to navigate the seas. As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master navigator. He used a compass, but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use. Over the years, Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew. Some of his books had information about routes to different places, and some described the history of sailing. They helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India, East Africa, and other places. He even wrote poems!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "seaman" means (explorer - inventor - navigator).
2. Ibn Majid learned how to (navigate - swim - surf) the seas.
3. Ibn Majid improved the design of the (ships - compass - boats).

B Answer these questions:

4. How many books did Ibn Majid write?
 ▶ ....
5. How were Ibn Majid's books helpful?
 ▶ ....



5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. travelers - he - did - How - help - sea?

▶ ....?

2. the - Ibn Majid - seaman - Arab - first - was.

▶ ....

3. important - astronomy - was - Why?

▶ ....?

4. navigate - to - how - He - the seas - learned.

▶ ....

5. of - What type - books - write - he - did?

▶ ....?

6. to - wanted - explore - Ibn Majid - and oceans - the seas.

▶ ....

7. like - to - Would - you - a sailor - be?

▶ ....?

6 Write a short story of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

❍ **Imagine a story about one of Ibn Majid's sea journeys in the past.**

▶ **Ideas to help you:** start - big ship - sailors - India - compass - find - lost ship - helped - route

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2 Language

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Phrasal Verbs



fill in
يملأ - يُكمِل



wake up
يستيقظ



pick up
يكتسب - يتعلم



see off
يُودِّع



figure out
يكتشف - يعرف



put away
يضع الشيء في مكانه



look up
يبحث عن (معلومة)



drop off
يوصل شخص لمكان

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

log in	يسجل الدخول إلى	**helpful**	متعاون
upload	يرفع على شبكة الإنترنت	**organized (adj)**	منظّم
download	يُحمّل من على شبكة الإنترنت	**cool**	لطيف - جميل
online	عبر الإنترنت	**crowded**	مزدحم
form (n)	استمارة	**luckily**	لحسن الحظ
staff	طاقم عمل	**adventure**	مغامرة

disability	إعاقة	**flight**	رحلة جوية
wheelchair	كرسي للمقعدين (متحرك)	**airport**	مطار
hiking shoes	حذاء المشي لمسافات طويلة	**land (v)**	يهبط على الأرض
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	**golden eagles**	نسور ذهبية
phrases	عبارات	**bears**	دببة
places	أماكن	**wildcats**	قطط برية
husband	زوج	**wolves**	ذئاب

Prepositions

decide to	يقرر أن	on the internet	على الإنترنت
around the world	حول العالم	in June	في شهر يونيو
go on a walking trip	يذهب في رحلة مشي	far away	بعيدًا
famous for	مشهور بـ	find out	يكتشف - يعرف
take out	يُخرج	at the front	في المقدمة

Sentences & Expressions

as many countries as possible	أكبر عدد ممكن من البلدان	we got a bus to	استقللنا حافلة إلى
I was so excited!	كنت متحمسًا للغاية!	that wasn't a problem	لم تكن تلك مشكلة
we had to be	كان علينا أن نكون	fly home	يطير عائدًا للوطن
Picos de Europa national park	محمية بيكوس دي يوروبا الوطنية	I felt a bit sad.	شعرت ببعض الحزن.

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

fill in	: to complete
wake up	: to stop sleeping
pick up	: to learn
see off	: to say goodbye to somebody leaving
figure out	: to discover
put away	: to put something in its place
look up	: to find out something
drop off	: to take somebody to a place
riad	: a special house in Morocco

An additional piece of information معلومة إضافية

riad: The term riad comes from the Arabic term for "gardens".
Riad (رياض) is the plural of rawda (روضة). A riad is a traditional Moroccan house or palace with an indoor garden and courtyard. Riads were the expensive villas of the wealthiest families.

رياض هي جمع كلمة روضة والتي تعني حديقة باللغة العربية. والرياض هو منزل أو قصر مغربي قديم ذو حديقة داخلية وفناء. وكانت الرياض في وقتٍ ما بمثابة فلل غالية الثمن تسكنها العائلات الثرية.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
fill in	يملأ - يُكمِل	filled in	filled in
pick up	يكتسب - يتعلم	picked up	picked up
discover	يكتشف	discovered	discovered
look up	يبحث عن (معلومة)	looked up	looked up
park	يركن (السيارة)	parked	parked

Present		Past	PP
stay	يمكث - يبقى	stayed	stayed
visit	يزور	visited	visited
land	يهبط على الأرض	landed	landed
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
figure out	يكتشف - يعرف	figured out	figured out
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used	used
complete	يُكمِل	completed	completed
delete	يزيل - يمحو	deleted	deleted
create	ينشئ - يبتكر	created	created
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
stop	يوقف - يتوقف	stopped	stopped
drop off	يوصل شخص لمكان	dropped off	dropped off

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه	put away	put away
read	يقرأ	read	read
have to	يجب أن - لا بُد	had to	had to
tell	يخبر	told	told
leave	يغادر	left	left
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	felt
get	يحصل على	got	got (gotten)
teach	يُدَرِس	taught	taught

Present		Past	PP
say	يقول	said	said
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
see off	يودع	saw off	seen off
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
take out	يُخرِج	took out	taken out
swim	يسبح - يعوم	swam	swum
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
fly	يطير	flew	flown



Read and learn



Blog

Log in Upload Download



Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I decided to travel around the world and see as many countries as possible. My mom said "yes"!

I was so excited! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair ❶, so we had to be very organized ❷, but that wasn't a problem. We filled in the forms ❸ to tell the train and plane staff about my disability ❹, and everybody was very helpful. I looked up ❺ the best places to visit on the internet before we left.

My favorite place in Morocco was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We stayed at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom woke me up ❻ early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I picked up ❼ a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi dropped us off ❽ at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!

❶ كرسي متحرك
❷ مُنَظِّمين - مُرَتَّبين
❸ ملأنا الاستمارات
❹ إعاقة - عجز
❺ بحثْتُ عن
❻ أيقظتني
❼ تعلّمتُ -التقطت
❽ أوصلنا - أنزَلنا

Blog

Log in Upload Download



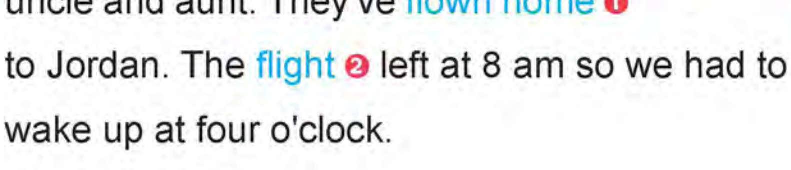
Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I went on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom saw us off ❶ at the airport. When we landed ❷, we got a bus to the Picos de Europa national park. It's very beautiful, and it was quite easy to walk.

We went in June, when it wasn't too hot. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were. I figured the answer out ❸ by looking online – they were golden eagles ❹. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears ❺ and wildcats ❻! Luckily, they were far away! The park is famous for its wolves ❼, but sadly, we didn't see any. It was a great trip, and I was sad to put my hiking shoes away ❽!

1. ودعتنا - قامت بتوديعنا
2. هبطت طائرتنا
3. اكتشفتُ الإجابة - عرفتُ الإجابة
4. نسور
5. دِبَبَة
6. قِطَطٌ بريّة
7. ذئاب
8. وضعتُ حذاء المشي لمسافات طويلة في مكانه

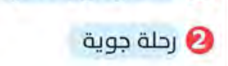
Activity Book Text

At the airport



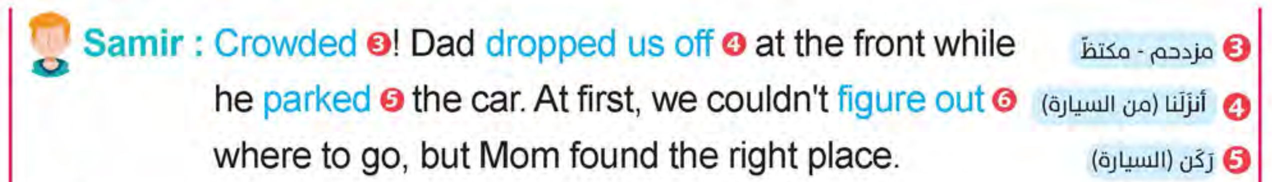

Fares : Hello, Samir. Where have you been?

Samir : We've been to the airport to see off my uncle and aunt. They've flown home ❶ to Jordan. The flight ❷ left at 8 am so we had to wake up at four o'clock.
I'm really tired.



1. عاد للوطن بالطائرة
2. رحلة جوية


Fares : Oh, dear! I've never been to the airport. What was it like?



Samir : Crowded ❸! Dad dropped us off ❹ at the front while he parked ❺ the car. At first, we couldn't figure out ❻ where to go, but Mom found the right place.

Fares : Cool. We're going to the United States next year, so my sister and I will need passports. Mom will fill in the forms ❼ for us.

Samir : Wow! You'll pick up ❽ some cool American phrases while you're there.

❸ مزدحم - مكتظّ
❹ أنزلنا (من السيارة)
❺ ركّن (السيارة)
❻ نعرف
❼ تملأ الاستمارات
❽ نتعلّم

Grammar Study



Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية

- **A phrasal verb is a verb that is followed by a preposition. The preposition changes the meaning of the verb.**
- الفعل الاصطلاحي هو الفعل المتبوع بحرف جر والذي يتغير معناه بتغير حرف الجر الذي يليه.

Examples:

- She saw the picture in the book. (see = notice with your eyes)
- She saw off her husband before he traveled. (see off = say goodbye)

- **When phrasal verbs have an object, this affects the word order.**
- عند وجود مفعول في الجملة التي بها فعل اصطلاحي فإن ذلك يؤثر على ترتيب الجملة.

Examples:

- I filled the form in before I left. (the form is the object)

You can also say:

- I filled in the form before I left.

- لاحظ أنه إذا كان المفعول اسمًا فإنه يجوز أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر، ويجوز أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر، وكلاهما صحيح.

■ **When the object is a pronoun, we follow this word order:**

■ أما إذا كان المفعول ضميرًا فلا بد أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر، ولا يجوز أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر.

Example:

- I filled it in before I left. ("it" is the object; it is a pronoun)
  NOT ~~I filled in it before I left~~.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

filled – organized – looked – decided – disability

Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I ❶ .... to travel around the world and see as many countries as possible. My mom said "yes"! I was so excited! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair, so we had to be very ❷ ...., but that wasn't a problem. We ❸ .... in the forms to tell the train and plane staff about my disability, and everybody was very helpful. I ❹ .... up the best places to visit on the internet before we left.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

dropped – loved – stayed – picked – woke

When I was in Morocco, my favorite place was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We ❶ .... at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom ❷ .... me up early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I ❸ .... up a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi ❹ .... us off at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

put – went – figured – knew – saw

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I ❶ .... on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom ❷ .... us off at the airport. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were. I ❸ .... the answer out by looking online – they were golden eagles. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears and wildcats! The park is famous for its wolves. It was a great trip, and I was sad to ❹ .... my hiking shoes away!

4 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

parked – place – flight – passports – airport

Fares : Hello, Samir. Where have you been?

Samir : We've been to the ❶ .... to see off my uncle and aunt. They've flown home to Jordan. The ❷ .... left at 8 am, so we had to wake up at four o'clock. I'm really tired.

Fares : Oh, dear! I've never been to the airport. What was it like?

Samir : Crowded! Dad dropped us off at the front while he ❸ .... the car. At first, we couldn't figure out where to go, but Mom found the right place.

Fares : Cool. We're going to the United States next year, so my sister and I will need ❹ .... Mom will fill in the forms for us.

Samir : You'll pick up some cool American phrases while you're there.

5 Choose the correct answer: (Phrasal verbs)

1. We filled (on - at - in) a form when we arrived at the hotel.

2. I looked (up - out - at) the best places to visit on the internet before we left.

3. When the taxi dropped us (of - off - over) at the airport, I felt a bit sad.

4. My mom woke me (out - on - up) early.

5. Moroccans speak French, so I picked (in - up - for) a lot of French phrases while I was there.

6. Mom saw us (for - of - off) at the airport.

7. I figured the answer (out - on - in) by looking online.

8. I was sad to put my hiking shoes (a way - way - away).

9. She saw (off him - off her husband - her husband of) before he traveled.

10. I filled (it in - in it - on it) before I left.

11. They are looking (up it - the route at - up the route) to the beach.

12. My clothes are on my bed. Mom and I are putting (away them - them a way - them away).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1. my sister - My dad - up - wakes - in - the - morning - at - 7 o'clock.
▶ ....

2. picked - some - German phrases - Berlin - in - He - up.
▶ ....

3. up - looking - They - are - route - the - to the beach.
▶ ....

4. Mom - and - putting - away - clothes - my - are - I.
▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

"A visit to a famous place"

▶ Ideas to help you:

- What was that place?
- Who went with you?
- When was the visit?
- What did you take with you?
- What did you see there?

....
....
....
....



Lessons 3-4 Amazing adventures! & Omar Hegazy



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



fins
زعانف



motorbike
دراجة نارية



banker
مصرفي - موظف بنك



athlete
لاعب رياضي



challenges
تحديات



inspiring
ملهِم



inspire
يُلهِم



crutch
عكاز



world-record-holding athlete
رياضي يحمل رقمًا قياسيًا عالميًا



break a world record
يحطم الرقم القياسي العالمي



follow their dreams
يسعون لتحقيق أحلامهم



hold his breath
يحبس أنفاسه

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

interview (n)	مقابلة	**rock climbing**	رياضة تسلق الصخور
skills	مهارات	**snorkeling**	الغوص باستخدام خرطوم للتنفس
breath	نَفَس	**scuba diving**	الغوص باستخدام أنبوبة أكسجين
chest	صَدْر	**diver**	غواص
keeping fit	المحافظة على اللياقة البدنية	**distance**	مسافة
fitness	لياقة بدنية	**transportation**	النقل
physical	بدني	**engine**	محرك

Adjectives & Adverbs

amazing adventures	مغامرات مدهشة	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
amazingly	مما يثير الدهشة	disabled	يعاني من إعاقة
enough	كافٍ	incredible	لا يصدق
successful	ناجح	rubber things	أشياء مطاطية
a female athlete	لاعبة رياضية	talented	موهوب

Verbs

achieve	يُنجز - يحقق	motivate	يَحُث - يدفع - يشجع
guide	يرشد	remove	يزيل
rest (v) (n)	يستريح - راحة	train hard	يتدرب بجد
canoe (v) (n)	يتنقل بالزورق - زورق	inspire	يُلهم

Places & Nature

the Amazon	منطقة الأمازون	Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
the Himalayas	جبال الهيمالايا	the Aqaba Gulf	خليج العقبة
the Arctic	القطب الشمالي	oases	واحات
environment	بيئة	shade	ظِل
landscape	منظر طبيعي	springs	عيون ماء - ينابيع

Prepositions

go back to	يعود إلى	listen to	يستمع إلى
go on an adventure	يذهب في مغامرة	put on	يرتدي
at the age of 25	في عُمر الـ 25	put up a tent	ينصب خيمة

Sentences & Expressions

gives talks to	يلقي محاضرات	had an accident	تعرض لحادث
do well at work	يؤدي جيدًا في عمله	He completed the swim in eight hours!	أكمل السباحة خلال ثماني ساعات!
inspire others	إلهام الآخرين	during the day	أثناء النهار
He felt free.	شَعُرَ بالحرية.	along the road	على طول الطريق
that part of the world	ذلك الجزء من العالم	It was too hot to sleep.	كان الجو حارًا جدًا لدرجة يصعب فيها النوم.

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

break a world record	: to do something better than anybody else in the world
follow (your) dreams	: to do something in life that you really want to do
world-record-holding athlete	: an athlete who has broken a world record
fins	: long rubber things to put on your feet to help you swim faster
crutch	: something to put under your arm to help you walk better
inspire	: to motivate and guide others
banker	: someone who works in a bank
hold your breath	: keep your breath inside your chest without breathing out
motorbike	: a type of transportation on two wheels, with an engine

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
work hard	يعمل بِجِد	worked hard	worked hard
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	enjoyed
train	يتدرب	trained	trained
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
rest	يستريح	rested	rested
achieve	يُنجِز - يُكمِل	achieved	achieved
inspire	يُلهِم	inspired	inspired
remove	يزيل	removed	removed
move	يتحرك	moved	moved

Present		Past	PP
cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled	cycled
believe	يعتقد - يؤمن	believed	believed
motivate	يحُث - يدفع	motivated	motivated
guide	يرشد	guided	guided
canoe	يتنقل بالزورق	canoed	canoed
try	يحاول - يجرب	tried	tried

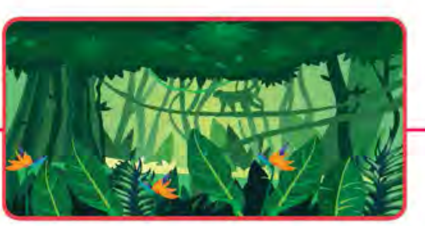
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
set (a record)	يسجل رقمًا قياسيًا	set	set
keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته البدنية	kept fit	kept fit
hold	يمسك - يحتفظ بـ	held	held
break	يكسر	broke	broken
do	يفعل	did	done
show	يُظهِر	showed	showed (shown)
give	يعطي	gave	given
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Read and learn



Activity Book Text



Amazing Adventures!

Emily went to the Amazon ❶ because she wanted to learn more about what humans are doing to the environment. She learned how to canoe ❷. She also learned how to take better photos. Her biggest challenge ❸ was that it was often too hot to sleep.

❶ منطقة الأمازون
❷ يُجَدِّف بزورق
❸ تحدّي

Tom went to the Himalayas ❹ because he has always been interested in that part of the world. He learned how to cook outside. He also learned how to put up a tent ❺ that was big enough for four people.



❹ جبال الهيمالايا
❺ ينصب خيمة

Omar Hegazy



Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a world-record-holding athlete ❶. He shows that when you work hard, you can achieve amazing things. He is very inspiring ❷, but his life has not always been easy.

At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. He had a good job as a banker ❸ in the Sinai Peninsula ❹, and he was very active. He enjoyed sports, including rock climbing ❺, snorkeling ❻, and keeping fit ❼.

One day, he was traveling along the road on his motorbike ❽ when he had an accident. The doctors told him that, unfortunately, they had to remove part of his leg. Omar had to learn to use a crutch ❾, and then a wheelchair.

Omar learned about two important athletes who are also disabled ❿. The first athlete is Dareen Barbar, a female athlete from Lebanon who has only one leg. The second person to inspire ⓫ Omar is Faisal Al-Mosawi, who is a wheelchair diver.

So, Omar began swimming. In the water, he felt free and his body moved easily. Slowly, Omar became stronger, and he trained hard. He decided that he wanted to break a world record ⓬, too. Omar tried to see if he could hold his breath ⓭ underwater longer than anybody else.

❶ رياضي يحمل رقمًا قياسيًا عالميًا
❷ مُلهِم
❸ موظف في بنك
❹ شبه جزيرة سيناء
❺ تسلُّق الصخور
❻ الغوص قريبًا من سطح الماء
❼ الحفاظ على اللياقة البدنية
❽ دراجة بخارية (نارية)
❾ عكاز
❿ يعانون إعاقة جسدية
⓫ يُلهِم
⓬ يكسر رقمًا قياسيًا عالميًا
⓭ يحبس أنفاسه

Omar trained hard, and in 2022, he could swim underwater for a distance of 56.48 meters!

He then put on fins ⓮ and swam for longer – 76.7 meters! He broke world records with both these swims. Since these incredible swims, Omar has also swum across the Aqaba Gulf ⓯. He completed the swim in eight hours! As well as this, Omar cycled ⓰ from Taba in the Sinai Peninsula to the Egyptian Pyramids in Giza. He never stops!

Today, Omar Hegazy is a very happy man, and gives talks to inspire others. He wants to help other people with disabilities ⓱ follow their dreams ⓲ and believe they can do anything.

⓮ زعانف
⓯ خليج العقبة
⓰ قاد دراجة
⓱ أشخاص ذوي إعاقات
⓲ يسعون لتحقيق أحلامهم

Activity Book Text

Faisal Al-Mosawi



In 2005, Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented ❶ football player. However, after a car accident ❷ he couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair. He was 20 years old. Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a challenge. So, in 2009 he learned scuba diving ❸ and he decided to become the fastest diver ❹ in the world. In 2018, he broke the world record ❺ and became the fastest person to scuba dive ❻ 10 km, in five hours and 24 minutes. He broke a record that was set in ❼ 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability ❽. Today, Faisal continues to scuba dive and he inspires young people by giving talks. Faisal wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities.

❶ موهوب
❷ حادث سيارة
❸ الغوص بجهاز التنفّس
❹ غوّاص (غطّاس)
❺ حطّم الرقم القياسي العالمي
❻ يغوص بجهاز تنفُّس
❼ سُجّل في - تحقّق في
❽ إعاقة - عجز

Exercises on Lessons 3 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

canoe – world – tent – environment – challenge

Emily went to the Amazon because she wanted to learn more about what humans are doing to the ❶ .... She learned how to ❷ .... She also learned how to take better photos. Her biggest ❸ .... was that it was often too hot to sleep.

Tom went to the Himalayas because he has always been interested in that part of the world. He learned how to cook outside. He also learned how to put up a ❹ .... that was big enough for four people.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



athletes - banker - leg - record - training - underwater

At the age of 25, Omar was a ❶ .... He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to the hospital, where the doctors removed part of his ❷ .... Then, Omar heard about two disabled ❸ ...., and he wanted to be like them. He started ❹ .... hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world ❺ .... in holding his breath ❻ .... Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

motorbike – crutch – dreams – record – accident

Interviewer : Hello, Omar. Can I ask you a few questions?
Omar : Hello! Of course you can.
Interviewer : What was your last job?
Omar : I was a banker.

Interviewer : What has changed your life?

Omar : One day, I was traveling along the road on my motorbike when I had an ❶ .... I had to learn to use a ❷ ...., and then a wheelchair.

Interviewer : How have you become a great athlete after that terrible accident?

Omar : I trained hard and hard. I decided that I wanted to break a world ❸ ....

Interviewer : You are a role model, Omar. You can also inspire others.

Omar : That's my aim. I want to help other people with disabilities follow their ❹ .... and believe they can do anything.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:



In 2005, Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player. However, after a car accident he couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair. He was 20 years old. Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a challenge. So, in 2009, he learned scuba diving and he decided to become the fastest diver in the world. In 2018, he broke the world record and became the <u>fastest</u> person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes. He broke a record that was set in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability. Today, Faisal continues to scuba dive and he inspires young people by giving talks. Faisal wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented (tennis - football - handball) player.
2. In (2005 - 2009 - 2011), he learned scuba diving.
3. The opposite of the underlined word "<u>fastest</u>" is (slowest - weakest - least).

B Answer these questions:

4. What happened to Faisal after the accident?
▶ ....

5. What does Faisal want to show the world?
▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. like best - her adventure - about - What - Emily - did?
▶ .... ?

2. a banker - He - as - had - job - a good.
▶ ....

3. on - an adventure - Would - to go - like - you?
▶ .... ?

4. a terrible - his motorbike - had - Omar - on - accident.
▶ ....

5. were - What - challenges - the trip - of - the?
▶ .... ?

6. to - record - wanted - a world - He - break.
▶ ....

6 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

"Omar's story"

▶ Ideas to help you: active - sports - accident - wheelchair - train - broke - inspire

....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 5 Language



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس




astronaut رائد فضاء



model spaceship نموذج لسفينة فضاء



spacesuit بدلة فضاء



mission مهمة



course دورة تدريبية



attached to مربوطة بـ



cleaning wipes مناديل تنظيف



marathon سباق مسافات طويلة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

career	حياة مهنية - وظيفة	**float (v)**	يطفو
university	جامعة	**drawers**	أدراج
space trip	رحلة إلى الفضاء	**weak**	ضعيف
lucky	محظوظ	**regularly**	بانتظام

Prepositions

on Earth	على الأرض	throw away	يرمي بعيدًا
in case	في حالة	move around	يتحرك في أنحاء المكان
at mealtimes	في أوقات الوجبات	stops the food from	يمنع الطعام من

Sentences & Expressions

make the trip	يقوم بالرحلة	less gravity	جاذبية أرضية أقل
an amazing experience	تجربة مُدهشة	training course	دورة تدريبية
That's so cool!	هذا رائع جدًا	do experiments	يجري تجارب
a two-year astronaut course	دورة لرواد الفضاء مدتها عامين	keep everything clean	يحافظ على كل شيء نظيف
give first aid	يقدم إسعافات أولية	three lengths	ثلاثة أطوال (مسافات)
physically strong	قوي بدنيًا	if they will be well	إذا ما كانوا سيكونون بخير
get sick	يمرض	special area	منطقة خاصة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
join	يلتحق بـ	joined	joined
fix	يصلح - يُثَبِّت	fixed	fixed
check	يفحص	checked	checked
float	يطفو	floated	floated
heat	يُسَخِّن	heated	heated
pack	يحزم	packed	packed
wash	يغسل	washed	washed
test	يختبر	tested	tested
ask	يطلب	asked	asked
store	يخزن	stored	stored
study	يَدرس	studied	studied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
put	يضع	put	put
teach	يُدَرِس - يُعَلِم	taught	taught
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
run	يجري	ran	run
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
throw away	يرمي بعيدًا	threw away	thrown away

Lesson Notes

- experiment تجربة علمية
- experience تجربة حياتية

▶ At school, we sometimes do experiments in the science lab.

▶ I think traveling to other countries is an amazing experience.



Read and learn



It's an astronaut's life


An astronaut trying to eat fruit in space!

Would you like to be an astronaut ❶? It's a great career ❷, but you need to work very hard. First of all, you should study science at school and university. After this, you need to do a difficult, two-year astronaut course ❸. If you are chosen to ❹ join the next space trip ❺, you are very lucky!

In the training course, a new astronaut is taught ❻ many things by their teachers. They are taught how to fix a spaceship ❼, and how to do experiments ❽. The students are shown how to give first aid ❾, too, in case someone becomes sick in space.

❶ رائد فضاء
❷ مهنة - وظيفة
❸ دورة تدريبية
❹ تم اختيارك لِـ
❺ رحلة للفضاء
❻ يتم تعليمه - يتعلم
❼ سفينة فضاء
❽ يقوم بإجراء تجارب
❾ يقدم إسعافات أولية

Astronauts need to be physically strong ⑩. They are regularly tested by doctors for their fitness. They are also usually asked to swim three lengths in their spacesuits ⑪ in a swimming pool. Often, they are asked to go into a model spaceship ⑫. There, they are checked to see if they will be well in the spaceship. If they get sick, they cannot make the trip.

When the astronauts are on their mission ⑬, their things are stored safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth. Their sleeping bags ⑭ are attached to ⑮ a wall so they don't float around ⑯ when they sleep. This is because there's less gravity than on Earth. Food is put in drawers ⑰ so it doesn't move around, too. See how the fruit is floating in the photo of the spaceship! At mealtimes ⑱, the food is heated up by the astronauts. The astronauts then eat from special bags, not from plates. This stops the food from floating away.

⑩ قوي بدنيًا
⑪ بدلات فضاء
⑫ نموذج لسفينة فضاء
⑬ مهمة
⑭ أكياس نوم
⑮ مربوطة في
⑯ تطفو في الأنحاء
⑰ أدراج
⑱ أوقات الوجبات
⑲ سوائل تنظيف
⑳ مناديل تنظيف
㉑ سباق - ماراثون
㉒ مُرتَّب - مُنَظَّم
㉓ حقيبة سفر

On the spaceship, it's important to keep everything clean. The team can't use cleaning liquids ⑲ for cleaning as there's less gravity, so they use cleaning wipes ⑳. There's no shower or bath in the spaceship, so astronauts wash themselves with cleaning wipes, too. The astronauts sometimes wear the same clothes for a long time in the spaceship. Often, dirty clothes are then thrown away.

The team needs to keep fit in space, so their bodies don't become weak. To do this, they run in a special area of the spaceship. Did you know that one astronaut, Sunita Williams, ran the Boston Marathon ㉑ while she was in space in 2007? That's so cool!

So, what do you think? Would you like an astronaut's life? Are you tidy ㉒ and organized? Is your suitcase ㉓ packed for space? I think we can all see that traveling into space would be an amazing experience, but is it for you?

Grammar Study

Present simple (active and passive)

المضارع البسيط المبني للمعلوم والمجهول

- **The passive is formed with the verb to be and the past participle of the main verb.**

- قاعدة تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط: **(am - is - are) + pp**

▶ Teachers teach a new astronaut many things.

○ A new astronaut is taught many things by teachers.

▶ Doctors test astronauts for their fitness.

○ Astronauts are tested by doctors for their fitness.

Active

- **In active sentences, we focus on the doer of the action (the person doing the action).**
- في صيغة المعلوم نركز على الفاعل الذي قام بالفعل ونبدأ به جملة المعلوم.

○ We study science at school and university.

Passive

- **In passive sentences, we focus on the object (the person/thing receiving the action).**
- في صيغة المجهول نركز على المفعول (الشخص أو الشيء الذي وقع عليه الفعل) ونبدأ به جملة المجهول.

○ Astronauts are asked to swim three lengths in their spacesuits.

- **The doer can be included in the sentence, using by, or it can be left out.**
- يمكن أن نذكر الفاعل في جملة المجهول مسبوقًا بحرف الجر (by) ويمكن ألا نذكره.

○ The food is heated up (by the astronauts).
○ Astronauts' bags are stored on the spaceship.

Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

course - space - astronaut - trip - university

It's great to be an ❶ .... It's a great career, but you need to work very hard. First of all, you should study science at school and ❷ .... After this, you need to do a difficult, two-year astronaut ❸ .... If you are chosen to join the next space ❹ ...., you are very lucky!

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sick - fitness - spaceship - spacesuits - strong

Astronauts need to be physically strong. They are regularly tested by doctors for their ❶ .... They are also usually asked to swim three lengths in their ❷ .... in a swimming pool. Often, they are asked to go into a model ❸ .... There, they are checked to see if they will be well in the spaceship. If they get ❹ ...., they cannot make the trip.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

attached - drawers - floating - gravity - mission

When the astronauts are on their ❶ ...., their things are stored safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth. Their sleeping bags are ❷ .... to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep. This is because there's less ❸ .... than on Earth. Food is put in drawers so it doesn't move around, too. The astronauts eat from special bags, not from plates. This stops the food from ❹ .... away.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. If you are (choose - chose - chosen) to join the next space trip, you are very lucky!
2. The teachers (teaching - are taught - taught) astronauts how to fix a spaceship.
3. In the training course, a new astronaut is (teaching - teach - taught) many things by their teachers.
4. (Does - Is - Did) your suitcase packed for space?
5. When the astronauts are on their mission, their things (store - are storing - are stored) safely on the spaceship.
6. The students (show - shown - are shown) how to give first aid by their teachers.
7. Astronauts are regularly (tested - are tested - test) by doctors for their fitness.
8. What (are - have - do) astronauts taught by their teachers?
9. How is the spaceship (clean - cleaned - is cleaned)?
10. Food (put - is put - are put) in drawers so it doesn't move around.
11. The teachers usually (ask - are asked - is asked) astronauts to swim three lengths in their spacesuits in a swimming pool.
12. Often, astronauts (ask - are asked - is asked) to go into a model spaceship by their teachers.
13. They are (checked - check - are checked) to see if they will be well in the spaceship.
14. Their sleeping bags are (attach - are attached - attached) to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep.
15. At mealtimes, the food (heated - heat - is heated) up by the astronauts.
16. Often, dirty clothes are (throw - threw - thrown) away.
17. When (is - are - do) clothes thrown away?

18. What are astronauts (ask - asked - are asked) to do to show they're fit and healthy?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. things - many - is - astronaut - A new - taught.
▶ ....
2. is - cleaned - How - spaceship - the?
▶ .... ?
3. need - strong - to - Astronauts - physically - be.
▶ ....
4. packed - Is - space - for - suitcase - your?
▶ .... ?
5. study - school - You - should - at - science.
▶ ....
6. away - are - thrown - When - clothes?
▶ .... ?

6 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Fares:

Tell him about a book you read about how to be an astronaut and what the astronaut's life is like. Your email address is ehab@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is fares@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 6 Writing: A biography



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



biography سيرة ذاتية



ambitious (adj) طَمُوح



base camp مُخيم رئيسي



avalanche انهيار ثلجي



achievement إنجاز



equipment معدات



earthquake زلزال - هزة أرضية



achieve her dream تُحقق حلمها

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Mount Everest	جبل إيفرست	**unfortunately**	لسوء الحظ
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمنجارو	**describe**	يصف
mountaineering guide	دليل (مرشد) تسلُّق الجبال	**However**	ومع ذلك
Kokoda Track	طريق كوكودا (في دولة بابوا غينيا الجديدة)	**young woman**	شابة

sequencing words	كلمات التتابع	**Next**	ثم
ordering events	ترتيب الأحداث	**After that**	بعد ذلك
First of all	أولًا - في البداية	**Finally**	أخيرًا

Prepositions

at the age of eight	في عُمر الثامنة	across deserts	عبر الصحاري
look at	ينظر إلى	arrived at	يصل إلى
went on journeys	ذهبوا في رحلات	get to	يصل إلى

Activity Book

the South Pole	القطب الجنوبي	explorers	مستكشفون
Antarctica	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	education	تعليم
the Atlantic Ocean	المحيط الأطلنطي	temperatures	درجات الحرارة
Greenland	جزيرة جرينلاند (تقع بين المحيط المتجمد الشمالي والمحيط الأطلنطي)	the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى (في شمال أفريقيا)
northern Norway	شمال النرويج	charity worker	مشتغل بالأعمال الخيرية
expedition	رحلة استكشافية	inspirational speaker	متحدث مُلهم
continent	قارة	snow (n)	جليد - ثلج
backpack	حقيبة ظَهر	total	إجمالي

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

avalanche	: when a lot of snow falls down a mountain
ambitious	: wanting to be successful
base camp	: a place where people climbing a mountain can rest

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
cross	يَعْبُر	crossed	crossed
happen	يَحدث	happened	happened
reach	يصل إلى	reached	reached
arrive at	يصل إلى	arrived at	arrived at
ski	يتزلج	skied	skied
continue	يستمر	continued	continued
describe	يصف	described	described
achieve	يُنجِز	achieved	achieved
introduce (someone)	يُقدِّم شخص	introduced	introduced
plan	يخطط	planned	planned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get to	يصل إلى	got to	got to
write	يكتب	wrote	written
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
take	يأخذ	took	taken
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen



Tip!

How to write a biography

- Do your research well. Look at different texts online, or in books, to find out facts about the person.
- Write a short first paragraph to introduce why the person is famous.
- Write key events in chronological (time) order. Use sequencing words.
- Write in the past tense because you are describing things which have already happened.

كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية

- قم بإجراء بحثك بشكل جيد. اطَّلِع على نصوص مختلفة عبر الإنترنت أو في الكتب لتعرف حقائق عن الشخص.
- اكتب فقرة أولى قصيرة لتوضيح سبب شهرة هذا الشخص.
- اكتب الأحداث الرئيسية بالتسلسل الزمني (الوقتي). استخدم كلمات التتابع.
- اكتب بصيغة الماضي لأنك تصف أشياء حدثت بالفعل.



Read and learn



Alyssa Azar: A biography



Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most ambitious adventurers ❶. She's the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest ❷.

Alyssa is from Toowoomba, Australia. She loved sports as a child. Her dad was a mountaineering guide ❸, so he often took her on trips with him. First of all ❹, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro when she was 14. After that, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her.

Alyssa trained hard, then she bought the correct equipment ❺ for climbing Everest.

❶ مغامرون طموحون
❷ جبل إيفرست
❸ مرشد تسلُّق جبال
❹ أولًا - في البداية
❺ معدات

Term 2

However, it was not very easy to climb the world's highest mountain. In 2014, and again in 2015, she got to the base camp ❻ at Everest. Unfortunately ❼, there were problems. In 2014, there was an avalanche ❽, and in 2015, there was an earthquake ❾. Sadly, she couldn't continue to the top.

Finally ❿, in 2016, Alyssa made it to ⓫ the top of Everest. She was 19 years old. Alyssa has written a book about her adventures ⓬, called The Girl Who Climbed Everest. In the book, she describes the hard work that helped her achieve her dream.

6 المعسكر الرئيسي
7 لسوء الحظ - للأسف
8 انهيار جليدي
9 هزّة أرضية - زلزال
10 في نهاية المطاف
11 وصلت (نجحت في الوصول) إلى
12 مغامرات

Activity Book Text

Matthieu Tordeur: A biography



Matthieu Tordeur is a world-record-holding explorer ❶. At the age of 27 years and 40 days, he became the youngest person to ski ❷ to the South Pole ❸ in Antarctica, alone, and without any help.

Matthieu was born in Rouen in France on 4 December, 1991. As a young man, Matthieu was inspired by famous explorers like Ranulph Fiennes, Ben Saunders, and Jean-Louis Étienne. After finishing his education, Matthieu went on many journeys across deserts, mountains, and snow. He cycled across Europe and China, and he sailed across ❹ the Atlantic Ocean ❺. Then he decided to ski to the South Pole.

1 مُستكشِف
2 يتزلّج
3 القطب الجنوبي
4 أبحَرَ عبر
5 المحيط الأطلنطي



First of all, he spent two years training in Greenland and northern Norway. After that, he did six marathons across the Sahara Desert ❻, one after the other, which was a total of 250 kilometers. He had to carry his food and water in backpacks. Next, Matthieu spent months planning his route. He looked up ❼ the information he needed and bought his equipment. He wanted to do his adventure alone and he knew that was going to be a big challenge.

Finally, on 13 January, 2019, Matthieu arrived at the South Pole after a journey of 51 days and a distance of 1,230 kilometers. Sometimes the temperatures ❽ were as low as -30°C. He skied all the way and he pulled ❾ 115 kg of equipment. Matthieu wrote a book about his adventures and he made a television program about it. And since then, he has broken more records ❿, written more books, and had many more adventures.

❻ الصحراء الكبرى
❼ بَحَثَ عن
❽ درجات الحرارة
❾ شَحَبَ - جَرَّ
❿ أرقام قياسية

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

adventures – ambitious – achieve – describe – climb

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most ❶ .... adventurers. She's the youngest Australian to ❷ .... Mount Everest. When she was 14, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her. In 2016, Alyssa made it to the top of Everest. She was 19 years old. Alyssa has written a book about her ❸ ...., called "The Girl Who Climbed Everest". In the book, she describes the hard work that helped her ❹ .... her dream.

Term 2

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

mountain – trips – train– equipment – guide

Alyssa is from, Australia. She loved sports as a child. Her dad was a mountaineering ❶ ...., so he often took her on ❷ .... with him. First of all, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro. After that, Alyssa trained hard, then she bought the correct ❸ .... for climbing Everest. It was not very easy to climb the world's highest ❹ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

put – went – figured – knew – saw

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I ❶ .... on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom ❷ .... us off at the airport. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were. I ❸ .... the answer out by looking online – they were golden eagles. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears and wildcats! The park is famous for its wolves. It was a great trip, and I was sad to ❹ .... my hiking shoes away!

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Alyssa's - was - What - job - dad's?
   ▶ .... ?
2. Everest - She - Mount - climb - decided - to.
   ▶ ....
3. when - did - What - she was 14 - do - she?
   ▶ .... ?

4. woman - young - an - is - Alyssa - amazing.

▶ ....

5. achievement - What - amazing - Alyssa's - was?

▶ .... ?

5 Write a biography of a person who inspires you:

"A Biography"

Look at these ideas to help you.

- Do some research and write some notes about the person.
(an athlete - an inspirational speaker - a person with a disability - a charity worker - a young businessperson)

Remember these things:

- Use sequencing words to order your ideas: First of all, Next, Then, After that, and Finally.
- Include important dates and interesting events in the person's life.
- Write in the past tense.
- Use capital letters for people's names, cities, countries, months, etc.

Lesson 7 Story: The travelers and the wolf



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


realize يدرك


chat (v) يدردش


pretend يتظاهر


whisper يهمس



the pigeons cooed هدلت الحمَامات (هديل)


crack of a branch طقطقة (كسر) غصن


deer غزال


wolf ذئب


sunrise شروق الشمس


palm trees نخيل


travelers مسافرون


true friends أصدقاء حقيقيون

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

nearby town	مدينة قريبة	**get closer**	يقترب
a bit hard	صعب بعض الشيء	**noise**	ضوضاء
I'm sure	أنا متأكد	**beautiful scene**	منظر جميل
after a while	بعد فترة	**dead**	ميت
immediately	في الحال	**so scared**	خائف جدًا
from now on	من الآن فصاعدًا	**a long walk**	تمشية طويلة

Prepositions

grow up	يكبر	at first	في البداية
get up	يستيقظ - ينهض	run away	يجري بعيدًا - يفر
on their backs	على ظهورهم	far away	بعيدًا
run back towards	يجري عائدًا تجاه	on his own	بمفرده
turn around	يستدير	fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرض
come up to	يأتي لـ	in danger	في خطر
come down	ينزل	at the start of the story	في بداية القصة
look for	يبحث عن	at the end of the story	في نهاية القصة

Activity Book

coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	huge shark	سمكة قرش ضخمة
dark shadow	ظل داكن	come together	يتجمعوا
frightening	مخيف	cheer	يهتف - يهلل
frightened	خائف	hug	يحضن - يحتضن
strong tail	ذيل قوي	brave	شجاع

Vocabulary Study

chatting	: talking in a friendly way to friends
sunrise	: when the sun rises in the sky in the morning
cooed	: made a low soft cry
crack	: the sound a branch makes when it breaks
whisper	: to talk very quietly
realize	: to know and understand something
pretend	: to act in a way that isn't true

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	pretended
whisper	يهمس	whispered	whispered
coo	تهدل (للحمام)	cooed	cooed
look for	يبحث عن	looked for	looked for
cheer	يهتف - يهلل	cheered	cheered
add	يضيف	added	added
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
start	يبدأ	started	started
agree	يقبل - يوافق	agreed	agreed
realize	يدرك	realized	realized
reply	يرد - يجيب	replied	replied
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
hug	يحضن - يحتضن	hugged	hugged
chat	يدردش	chatted	chatted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get help	يحصل على المساعدة	got help	got help
grow up	يكبر	grew up	grown up
leave	يترك - يغادر	left	left
come down	ينزل	came down	come down
have fun	يستمتع	had fun	had fun



Read and learn



Story: The travelers and the wolf

Three men, Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan, lived in a village. They were very good friends, and they grew up ❶ together. They studied at the same school and now worked near each other. One day, the friends decided to go to the market in the nearby ❷ town. "What time should we leave tomorrow?" asked Amin. "I think we should leave before sunrise ❸ so it's not too hot to walk," said Ashraf.

"I agree," said Sultan.

The men got up ❹ at 5:30 the next day, and walked together through the desert road. They carried backpacks ❺ on their backs with water and snacks. The men enjoyed chatting ❻ about their lives and their families.

"So, is your daughter, Noura, enjoying school?" asked Amin.

"Well, she seems very happy, and she likes her teacher and her friends," replied Ashraf. "But she's finding reading difficult. I think I need to help her more."

"Yes, sometimes learning is a bit hard ❼ at first," said Sultan, "I'm sure she'll achieve great things."

After a while, they came to an oasis ❽, and saw a beautiful deer ❾ with big eyes. When they got closer ❿, the deer ran away ⓫, and there was a noise in the leaves. They saw that the deer was back with her baby. It was a beautiful scene ⓬. The men then looked up and saw pigeons ⓭ in the palm trees. The pigeons cooed ⓮ at each other. "How nice it is to see all these special things with my best friends!" said Amin.

"Yes, this is a lovely place!" added Ashraf.

❶ نشأوا
❷ قريبة - مجاورة
❸ شروق الشمس
❹ استيقظوا
❺ حقائب الظهر
❻ دردشة - حديث
❼ صعب بعض الشيء
❽ واحة
❾ غزال
❿ اقتربوا
⓫ هرب - ركض مبتعدًا
⓬ مشهد - منظر
⓭ حمام
⓮ أصدر صوت هديل (صوت الحمام)



Suddenly ⓯, there was a crack of a branch ⓰. Sultan looked behind him, and then started to run back towards the village. Ashraf climbed a tree, but Amin didn't move. He realized ⓱ he was on his own ⓲. Amin slowly turned around and saw what his friends had seen – a black wolf ⓳.

He immediately ⓴ fell to the ground ㉑ and pretended ㉒ to be dead. Amin didn't move. The wolf came up to him and touched his face with his nose. It whispered ㉓ something in his ear, then walked back into the desert.

Sultan came back, with two men from the village. "Are you OK?" Sultan asked.

⓯ فجأة
⓰ صوت انكسار غصن شجرة
⓱ أدرك
⓲ وحيد - بمفرده
⓳ ذئب
⓴ على الفور - في الحال
㉑ سقط على الأرض
㉒ تظاهر - ادّعى
㉓ همَس
㉔ خائف - مرعوب

Ashraf came down from the tree. "What did the wolf whisper to you?" he asked. Amin looked sad and said, "Never travel with friends who leave you when you're in danger." You, Sultan, ran back to the village to get help. Thank you. You, Ashraf, climbed the tree so the wolf would eat me, and not you!"

"I'm sorry, Amin," said Ashraf, feeling bad. "I was so scared ㉔. I want to be a better friend from now on."

Activity Book Text

The fish and the shark



One day, Little Fish was swimming with her friends in the wide, blue sea. They were playing games in the coral reef ❶ and having fun. They could see their families who weren't far away. Later that day, while they were playing, they saw a dark shadow ❷ moving towards them. It was the early afternoon, but suddenly the sea looked dark and frightening ❸. The shadow was the shape of a huge shark with a big mouth and a long, strong tail ❹.

❶ الشعاب المرجانية
❷ ظِل - خيال
❸ مرعب - مخيف
❹ ذيل

Little Fish was very frightened ❺. She looked for her family and she saw her father swimming towards her.

"Listen to me everybody," said Father Fish. "Everybody come together, quickly."

All the fish swam towards Father Fish. "If we all swim together, we'll look like a big shark. Come together everybody. Now, be brave ❻ Little Fish, and swim with me. We'll all swim together towards the shark."

As they swam, they made a big shadow in the shape of a shark ... a bigger shark! The shark saw this big shadow and he thought, "Oh, dear. That shark is bigger than me. I think it might be dangerous. Perhaps I'll go home." And he turned around ❼ and quickly swam away. All the fish cheered ❽ and hugged ❾ each other. They were happy because they were safe again.

❺ خائفة - مرتعبة
❻ كن شجاعًا
❼ استدار - التفّ
❽ هلّل - ابتهج
❾ حضن

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

grew - village - nearby - scenes - friends

Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan lived in a ❶ .... They were very good ❷ ...., and they ❸ .... up together. They studied at the same school and now worked near each other. The friends go to the market in the nearby town from time to time. They enjoy seeing the beautiful ❹ .... together.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. were - friends - good - They - very.

▶ ....

2. travel with - Who - to - you - would - like?

▶ .... ?

3. pretended - dead - He - be - to.

▶ ....

4. leave - we - time - should - What?

▶ .... ?

5. studied - They - at - school - same - the.

▶ ....

3 **Write a short story of (70) words using the following guiding elements:**

"A short story"

Write a story you have read at the library and you liked it.

DEDICATED TO READING

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 5 Test 1

Total
30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. When Lucy was (twelve - thirteen - fourteen - fifteen), she decided to travel around the world.
2. They decided to go to (Egypt - Tunisia - Algeria - Morocco) first.
3. Lucy uses a (wheelchair - motorbike - scooter - skateboard).
4. Lucy looked up the best places to visit on the (map - internet - compass - television).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

environment – humans – challenge – canoe – world

Interviewer : Hello, Emily. Nice to meet you.
Emily : Hello. Thank you.
Interviewer : Where did you spend your last vacation?
Emily : I went to the Amazon.
Interviewer : Why did you choose that part of the ❶ .... ?
Emily : Because I wanted to learn more about what ❷ .... are doing to the environment.
Interviewer : What skills did you learn there?
Emily : I learned how to ❸ .... I also learned how to take better photos.
Interviewer : Were there any problems?
Emily : Yes, my biggest ❹ .... was that it was often too hot to sleep.
Interviewer : Did you have a nice time there?
Emily : Yes, I enjoyed seeing nature a lot.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

For a long time, people have dreamed of traveling away from the Earth to visit the moon and some of our planets. Until recently, most people thought that space travel was a dream. But man's dream of traveling to

Term 2

the moon has become a fact. Rockets are so powerful that they can travel through space at a great speed and at a great height. During the flight, space travelers face some problems. They become weightless and they need oxygen tanks to breathe. Man has been able to reach the moon and walk on it. He has even collected some rocks and put scientific instruments there to send information about the moon. As there is no air or water, there is no life on the moon. However, some people expect that there will be space cities in the future. Do you agree with them?

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Man has reached the moon by (planes - jumbo jets - ships - rockets and spaceships).
2. The underlined word "powerful" means (strong - weak - small - tiny).
3. People need (carbon dioxide - oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen) to breathe.

B Answer these questions:

4. What's your answer to the question in the last line in the passage?
   ▶ ....
5. What makes life impossible on the moon?
   ▶ ....

The Reader The Silk Road (4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Today, it's difficult to buy and sell goods in different parts of the world. ( )
2. In the past, it was safer for traders to travel in caravans. ( )
3. The Silk Road was very important for over 2,500 years. ( )
4. Traveling on the Silk Road was hard. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. How does the Silk Road get its name?
   ▶ ....
6. Why did travelers in the past use camels?
   ▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. We went to the airport to see (of - at - off - from) my cousins.
2. The spaceship is (preparing - prepare - is prepared - prepared) before the mission into space.
3. Amira carefully (put away her new book - put away it - it put away - her new book put away).
4. Experiments (do - are doing - done - are done) every day by the team.
5. The space flight (are watched - watched - is watched - watch) by millions of people.
6. Toqa loves (reads - read - reading - to reading) in her free time.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. Omar Hegazy - did - Which - break - records - world?
   ▶ .... ?
2. lived - ago - years - of - hundreds - Ahmad Ibn Majid.
   ▶ ....
3. were - the trip - of - What - challenges - the?
   ▶ .... ?

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

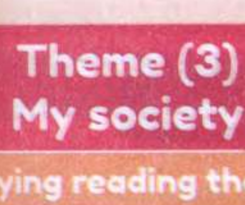
"An amazing adventure"

▶ Ideas to help you:

- Where did you go?
- What skills did you learn?
- Was it difficult?
- What did you like best about the trip?
- What were the challenges of the trip?

....
....
....
....
....





Enjoying reading the news together



Breaking news!

أنباء عاجلة!



In this unit, I will ....

- understand specific details in a news report.
- listen, read, and write about the job of a journalist.
- understand and use the present and past simple passive.
- understand and use phrases for reacting to personal news.
- understand the relationship between a series of events.
- understand and use the future simple passive.
- write a simple newspaper report.
- make logical inferences.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Words from news articles:** garage sale, volunteers, equipment, hutch, responsible, check on, vaccination, newspaper, editor **Words related to the news:** international, journalism, breaking news, staff, sociable, newspaper, editor **Words from the stories:** investigate, promise, barn, summer, fall (n), shade
Language	**Present simple and past simple passive:** The cheetahs are now safe and are fed every day. Their habitat wasn't protected. **Future simple passive:** The wildlife will be destroyed!
Reading	School newspaper articles; news articles; an article about the life of a journalist; a story about helping the environment
Writing	A news report with an introduction, further details, and a conclusion
Speaking	Reacting to good and bad news
Listening	Dialogs discussing good and bad news
Life skills	**Critical thinking:** discussing jobs in the news
Values	**Social responsibility**
Issues and challenges	**Citizenship**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Social studies:** using media to improve the world around you

Lesson 1 Our School Newspaper



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



newspaper
جريدة - صحيفة



news
أنباء - أخبار



articles
مقالات



headlines
عناوين رئيسية



editor
مُحَرِّر



responsible
مسؤول



volunteers
متطوعون



check on
يتفقد - يطمئن على



garage sale
معرض بيع بضائع مستعملة



equipment
معدات - أدوات



hutch
قفص (منزل صغير للأرنب)



vaccinations
تطعيمات

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

pets	حيوانات أليفة	**journalist**	صحفي
vet	طبيب بيطري	**science teacher**	مدرس علوم
lettuce	خس	**grade**	صف - سنة دراسية
health care	رعاية صحية	**schoolwork**	عمل مدرسي

Prepositions

look after	يعتني بـ	get better at	يتحسن في
care for	يعتني بـ	on time	في الوقت المحدد
married to	متزوجة من	on the day	في هذا اليوم

Sentences & Expressions

in good shape	في حالة جيدة	once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
take turns	تتناوب (نتبادل) الأدوار	twice a week	مرتان في الأسبوع
do math	يجري عمليات حسابية	find it difficult	يجد صعوبة
the rest of the class	باقي الفصل	do calculations	يُجري حسابات

Activity Book

raise money	يجمع مالاً	special event	حدث مميز (خاص)
local charities	جمعيات خيرية محلية	models	نماذج
community	مجتمع	crafts	مصنوعات يدوية

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

volunteer	: someone who works for free
equipment	: tools or things you need to do something
newspaper	: a printed paper that gives you news
editor	: the person who chooses the news stories
hutch	: a small house for a rabbit
responsible	: being someone others can rely on
vaccinations	: a medicine that protects a person or animal from a disease
check on	: to make sure that someone is doing well

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
collect	يجمع	collected	collected
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	looked after
call	يدعو - يسمي	called	called
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
care	يهتم - يعتني	cared	cared
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
decorate	يزين - يزخرف	decorated	decorated
rely	يعتمد	relied	relied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
bring	يُحْضِر - يجلب	brought	brought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
make sure	يتأكد	made sure	made sure
get	يحصل على	got	got
know	يعرف	knew	known
send	يرسل	sent	sent
think	يعتقد - يظن	thought	thought
give	يعطي	gave	given
teach	يُعَلِّم - يُدَرِّس	taught	taught
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Newspapers are made on a printing press. The modern printing press was invented by a German called Johannes Gutenberg around 1440!

تُطبَع الصحف (الجرائد) في المطابع. تم اختراع المطبعة بشكلها الحديث بواسطة ألماني يدعى يوهانس غوتنبرغ حوالي عام 1440!



Read and learn



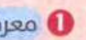
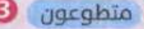
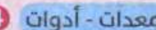
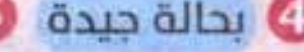
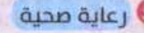
Our School Newspaper

Making a garage sale



Every year we have a garage sale ❶ at our school. This means volunteers ❷ from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen equipment ❸. These items are old, but they are still in good shape ❹ and can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to buy them. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care ❺ in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers. Everyone is really happy!

Noha

❶ معرض بيع أشياء مستعملة ❷ متطوعون ❸ معدات - أدوات ❹ بحالة جيدة ❺ رعاية صحية

Looking after the class pet



My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a hutch ❶ in the school garden. We take turns ❷ with the rest of the class to look after ❸ him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water.

❶ قفص ❷ نتناوب الأدوار ❸ نعتني بـ - نهتم بـ

He loves carrots ❹ and lettuce ❺! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets ❻ and be responsible ❼. Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet ❽. He comes in once a week to check on ❾ Crunchy, and to make sure he gets all his vaccinations ❿ on time.

Rana

❹ جَزَر ❺ خس ❻ يرعى (يعتني بـ) الحيوانات الأليفة
❼ مسؤولين ❽ طبيب بيطري ❾ يفحص - يطمئن على ❿ تطعيمات - تحصينات



Helping younger children

My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in Grades 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math ❶. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do calculations ❷. The children also love our school newspaper ❸ because there are articles ❹ about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists ❺, too! I read with a boy called Seleem. Seleem is getting better at ❻ reading and writing now. He wrote an article about our school football team. We sent it to the editor ❼ of the school newspaper. The editor thought the story was great, and Seleem saw his article in the newspaper the next week. That was very special for us!

Hassan

❶ إجراء العمليات الحسابية ❷ إجراء الحسابات ❸ صحيفة - جريدة ❹ مقالات ❺ صحفيين ❻ يتحسن في ❼ مُحَرِّر

Activity Book Text

Charity Day at School



My class likes to raise money ❶ for local charities. Our teacher, Mrs Mariam, helps us organize a special event called Charity Day every few months. We put tables and chairs in the school hall.

❶ يجمع مالًا

Term 2

Then we decorate ❷ the hall with flowers from the school garden. On Charity Day, our parents and people from the community come to buy things. Some children make cakes and lemonade ❸ to sell. My friend Fares and his sister Laila make delicious snacks, too. We also bring books and crafts ❹ to sell. I like making models ❺, so I make models and I sell them on the day. We give the money we raise to local charities. It's a special day for the community and it's always a lot of fun!

❷ يزين - يزخرف
❸ عصير ليمون
❹ مصنوعات يدوية
❺ نماذج

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

equipment – sale – health – volunteers – care

Every year we have a garage ❶ .... at our school. This means ❷ .... from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen ❸ .... These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. The money we collect is used to help children who need health ❹ .... in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers. Everyone is really happy!

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

vaccinations – lettuce – check – responsible – hutch

My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a ❶ .... in the school garden. We take turns with the rest of the class to look after him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be ❷ .... Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to ❸ .... on Crunchy, and to make sure he gets all his ❹ .... on time.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

charities – crafts – raise – community – decorate

My class likes to ❶ .... money for local charities. Our teacher, Mrs Mariam, helps us organize a special event called Charity Day every few months. We put tables and chairs in the school hall. Then we ❷ .... the hall with flowers from the school garden. On Charity Day, our parents and people from the ❸ .... come to buy things. Some children make cakes and lemonade to sell. We also bring books and ❹ .... to sell.

4 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

newspaper – editor – calculations – articles – Grades

Hassan: Hi, Samir. I heard that your class does some good work at school.

Samir : Hi, Hassan. Yes, that's right. My class likes to help the younger children at our school.

Hassan: How can you do that?

Samir : Some of the children in ❶ .... 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math.

Hassan: What can you do for them?

Samir : Well! We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do ❷ ....

Hassan: That's great! What else?

Samir : We help them read the school ❸ .... They love it because there are ❹ .... about people they know in school.

Hassan: You're doing a great job, Samir.

Samir : Thank you.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions:

I'm Hassan. My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in Grades 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do calculations. The children also love our school newspaper because there are articles about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too! I read with a boy called Seleem. Seleem is getting better at reading and writing now. He wrote an article about our school football team. We sent it to the editor of the school newspaper. The editor thought the story was great, and Seleem saw his article in the newspaper the next week. That was very special for us!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "they" refers to the (stories - children - journalists).
2. Seleem wrote a/an (book - newspaper - article) about our school football team.
3. The (editor - teacher - journalist) thought what Seleem wrote was great.

B Answer these questions:

4. How often does Hassan's class go to Grades 3 and 4 classrooms?
▶ ....
5. Why do the children love their school newspaper?
▶ ....

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. a garage sale - we - Every year - at - have - our school.
▶ ....

2. married - is - Mrs Doaa - a vet - to.

▶ ....

3. like - Would - to - you - be - an editor?

▶ .... ?

4. school - The children - our - love - newspaper.

▶ ....

5. the story - thought - The editor - was - great.

▶ ....

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Dina:

Tell her about the charity work you do at school, how you help your friends who can't read or write well, and how you help your community. Your email address is rana@school.net and your friend's email address is dina@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2 Language



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس






attack يهاجم	**destroy** يدمر	**track** يتعقب - يتتبع أثر	**return** يعود






conservation حفظ - حماية	**habitat** موطِن (موئل) طبيعي	**giant** ضخم - عملاق	**enemies** أعداء

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

cheetah	الفهد الصياد	**Indian people**	الشعب الهندي
leopard	نمر مُرَقَّط - فهد	**China**	الصين
panda	باندا	**country**	بلد - دولة
bamboo	نبات الخيزران - البامبو	**Kuno National Park**	محمية كونو الوطنية
almost	تقريبًا	**successful**	ناجح
recently	مؤخرًا - حديثًا	**pleased**	سعيد - مسرور

Prepositions

in danger	في خطر	move around	يتنقَّل - يتجول
on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	by you	بواسطتك
for example	على سبيل المثال	cut down	يقطع

Sentences & Expressions

The cheetahs are back! عادت الفهود الصيادة!	get lost يتوه - يضل الطريق
until the 1950s حتي فترة الخمسينيات	a little worried قلق بعض الشيء
much later بعد فترة طويلة	safe enough آمنة بدرجة كافية
safe area منطقة آمنة	live long, healthy lives تعيش حياة صحية طويلة

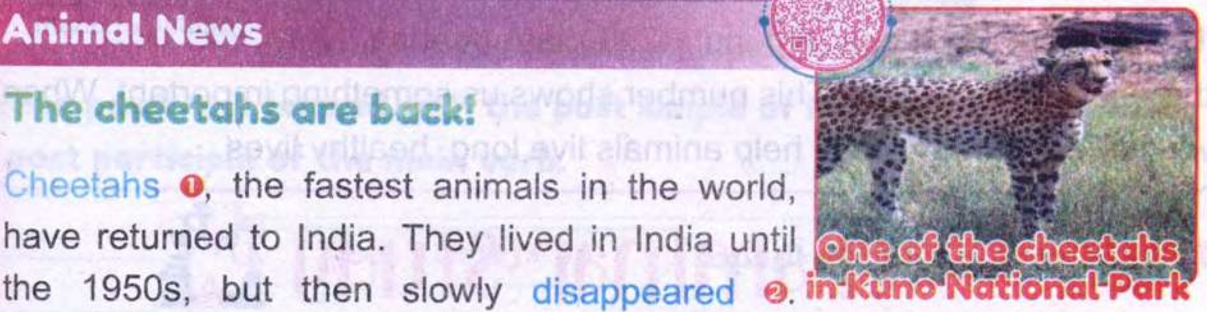
Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	PP
return	يعود	returned	returned
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared
watch	يشاهد - يراقب	watched	watched
track	يتعقب	tracked	tracked
attack	يهاجم	attacked	attacked
design	يصمم	designed	designed
post	ينشر (على الإنترنت)	posted	posted
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	destroyed
worry	يَقْلَق - يُقْلِق	worried	worried

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
cut down	يقطع	cut down	cut down
feed	يُطعِم	fed	fed
build	يبني	built	built
show	يعرض	showed	showed (shown)

Animal News



One of the cheetahs in Kuno National Park

The cheetahs are back!

Cheetahs ❶, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared ❷. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India – Kuno National Park ❸. The Indian people are very pleased ❹ to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed ❺ every day. They aren't watched ❻ all the time, but they are tracked ❼ so they don't get lost.

Some people are a little worried. This is because when the cheetahs move around more, they will meet other big cats, for example, leopards ❽, which could attack the cheetahs. Some people are asking, "Is the area designed ❾ to be safe enough?" It's so important that they are protected.

More giant pandas!

Who doesn't love a giant ❿ panda? There are lots of videos of them on social media! Were any of the videos posted ⓫ by you? Sadly ⓬, some years ago, giant pandas were put in danger ⓭. Much of their habitat ⓮ was destroyed ⓯ to build new homes. Their habitat wasn't protected ⓰. Pandas only eat bamboo ⓱, which was cut down ⓲ for the houses.

Many people were very worried, so the pandas were put into ⓳ special areas, where they were protected. They were given ⓴ as much bamboo as they could eat.



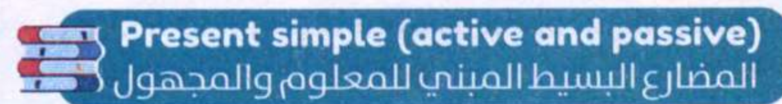
A giant panda eating bamboo

1. الفهود الصيادة
2. اختفت
3. حديقة (محمية) وطنية
4. مسرورون - سعداء
5. يتم إطعامها
6. لا يتم مراقبتها
7. يتم تعقُّبها (تتبُّعها)
8. نمور - فهود
9. مُصَمَّمة - مُعَدّة
10. ضخم - عملاق
11. نُشِرَت
12. للأسف
13. في وضع خطر
14. موطن - موئل
15. دُمِّرَت
16. محمية - تتمتع بالحماية
17. خيزران - بامبو
18. يُقطَع
19. وُضِعَت في
20. أُعطِيَت

This conservation work ㉑ has been very successful. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas. Now there are almost 2,000! This number shows us something important. When we try very hard, we can help animals live long, healthy lives.

㉑ أعمال الاستبقاء (الحفظ من الانقراض)

Grammar Study



The passive is formed with the present simple of the verb to be and the past participle of the main verb.

قاعدة تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط: **(am - is - are) + pp**

Affirmative

Example:

- They feed the cheetahs every day.
  - ▶ The cheetahs are fed every day.

Negative

Example:

- They don't watch the cheetahs all the time.
  - ▶ The cheetahs aren't watched all the time.

Question

Example:

- Are the cheetahs protected?
  - ▶ Yes, they are.
  - ▶ Yes, they are protected.

Past simple (active and passive)
الماضي البسيط المبني للمعلوم والمجهول

The passive is formed with the past simple of the verb to be and the past participle of the main verb.

قاعدة تحويل زمن الماضي البسيط: **(was – were) + pp**

Affirmative

Example:

- People destroyed much of the habitat to build new homes.
  - ▶ Much of the habitat was destroyed by people to build new homes.

Negative

Example:

- People didn't protect the habitats of pandas.
  - ▶ The habitats of pandas weren't protected by people.

Question

Example:

- Were any of the videos posted by you?
  - ▶ No, they weren't.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



are fed – are protected – looked – were brought – are tracked

Cheetahs lived in India until the 1950s, but slowly died out. Recently, eight of them ❶ .... to Kuno National Park. The cheetahs now live in a safe area and they ❷ .... every day. Also they ❸ .... so that they don't get lost. Some people are worried they will meet leopards and other big cats, but it's important that cheetahs ❹ .... now.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



were given - wasn't protected - were put - was cut down

Sadly, giant pandas are in danger. Their habitat ❶ .... Pandas only eat bamboo, and the bamboo ❷ .... to build new houses. The pandas ❸ .... into safe areas and they ❹ .... as much bamboo as they could eat. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas but now there are almost 2,000!

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The cheetahs (are - was - is) fed every day.
2. The cheetahs are (tracks - tracked - track) so they don't get lost.
3. The giant pandas (are puts – are putting - were put) in danger some years ago.

4. The bamboo (was - were - are) cut down for the pandas to eat.

5. The giant pandas were (giving - given - gave) as much bamboo as they could eat.

6. (Does – Were - Is) the area designed to be safe enough?

7. It's important that cheetahs are (protects - protect - protected) now.

8. Were any of the videos (posted - post - posting) by you?

9. Much of their habitat (were destroyed – was destroying - was destroyed) to build new homes.

10. Some years ago, giant pandas (was put - were put - are put) in danger.

11. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they (were fed - was fed - are fed) every day.

12. They (were watched - are watched - aren't watched) all the time, but they are tracked so they don't get lost.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. the fastest - are - Cheetahs - the world - in - animals.

▶ ....

2. designed - the area - Is - to be - enough - safe?

▶ .... ?

3. aren't - They - time - all - the - watched.

▶ ....

4. pandas - put - Giant - were - danger - in.

▶ ....

5. important - It's - that - they - protected - are.

▶ ....

Lessons 3-4 Well done! & The life of a journalist



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



breaking news
أنباء عاجلة



news story
خبر - قصة إخبارية



news reports
تقارير إخبارية



TV reporter
مراسل تلفزيوني



journalism
صحافة



journalist
صحفي



editor
مُحَرِّر - ناشر



press box
مقصورة الصحافة



sociable
شخص اجتماعي



international
دولي - عالمي



staff
موظفون - فريق العمل



script
نَصّ

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

partner	شريك - زميل	cab service	خدمة سيارات الأجرة
cameraman	مُصَوِّر	subway	قطار الأنفاق (المترو)
soundman	مهندس الصوت	internationally	دوليًا - عالميًا
manager	مدير	details	تفاصيل
office	مكتب	opinion	رأي
print (v)	يطبع	communicate	يتواصل

Prepositions

at the end of the day	في نهاية اليوم	focus on	يركز على
look up facts	يبحث عن حقائق	at home	في البيت
talk to	يتحدث إلى	all over Egypt	في جميع أنحاء مصر
related to	متعلق بـ - مرتبط بـ	on weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
by midday	بحلول منتصف اليوم	on vacation	في عطلة (إجازة)
ready for	جاهز لـ - مستعد لـ	decide to	يقرر أن
good at	جيد في	able to	قادر على
work for	يعمل لدى	agree to	يوافق على - يتفق على

Phrases عبارات

When we hear good news, we say ...	When we hear bad news, we say ...
Oh, wow! أوه، مذهل!	Oh, no! أوه، لا!
That's great! هذا رائع!	That's too bad! هذا مؤسف!
Well done! أحسنت!	Better luck next time. حظ أوفر في المرة القادمة.
That's amazing (awesome - fantastic) news! هذه أخبار رائعة!	What a pity! يا للأسف!
I'm so pleased for you! أنا سعيد جدًا من أجلك!	I'm sorry. أنا آسف.

Sentences & Expressions

lost the game خسر المباراة	My aunt had a baby. أنجبت عمتي (خالتي) طفلًا.
I won a prize in the science fair! لقد فزت بجائزة في معرض العلوم!	passed my test اجتزت اختباري
have a party يقيم حفلة	save time يوفر وقتًا

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

international	: related to more than one country
breaking news	: new information about an event that is happening now
journalism	: the study, or job, of writing articles for newspapers and magazines
sociable	: describing a person who likes talking to, and being with, other people
staff	: people who work at a place, for example, a hotel

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
focus	يركز	focused	focused
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
happen	يَحْدُث	happened	happened
research	يبحث	researched	researched
interview	يجري مقابلة	interviewed	interviewed
pass	يجتاز	passed	passed
chat	يدردش	chatted	chatted
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
describe	يصف	described	described
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
invite	يدعو	invited	invited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt	hurt
let	يسمح - يدع	let	let

Present		Past	PP
lose	يخسر	lost	lost
win	يفوز	won	won
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
say	يقول	said	said
get up	ينهض - يستيقظ	got up	got up




Read and learn

Activity Book Text

Farah : Hi, Jana. I've got some great news. My parents have agreed to let me have a party ❶ for my birthday!

Jana : Oh, wow! That's fantastic news. When's your birthday?

Farah : My birthday's next month. I can invite all my friends.

Jana : That's great! I'm so pleased ❷ for you. What date is it?

Farah : It's on Saturday, September 16th. Can you come?

Jana : No, I won't be able to come. That's a pity ❸. I'm visiting my grandparents that weekend.

Farah : Oh, no! That's too bad ❹. Let's do something together the weekend before.

Jana : That's a good idea.

❶ اقيم حفلة
❷ مسرورة - سعيدة
❸ هذا مؤسف
❹ هذا مؤسف

The life of a journalist

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist ❶, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist.

Sylvia, journalist

I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism ❷ at university. I think a journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate well to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

I love my job. It's fun, and every day is different because we don't know what news will come in. There are many kinds of journalists. I'm a news journalist, so I write the breaking news ❸, that is, the news as it starts to happen.

Every day, I get up early and have breakfast. Then I call my editor to see what stories I need to write about. I write my news reports from home, but I can get anywhere in the city if there's a story there. Luckily, we have an excellent subway ❹ and cab ❺ service here. I travel all over Egypt, and also internationally ❻, when I need to. Last week, I was in India!

All the news stories are sent to the editor by midday. Then I get some lunch, often with a friend. In the afternoon, I start researching stories and interviewing ❼ people, ready for the next day.

Sometimes, if a news story is breaking, I need to work in the evening, and into the night, and sometimes even on weekends!

Last Monday, I was so happy. One of my articles was chosen to be one of the main stories ❽. It was about a fire in a hotel – luckily ❾, nobody was hurt.

❶ صحفية دولية
❷ الصحافة
❸ الأخبار العاجلة
❹ مترو (قطار الأنفاق)
❺ سيارة أجرة
❻ دوليًا - عالميًا
❼ إجراء مقابلات مع
❽ الأخبار (القصص) الرئيسية
❾ لحسن الحظ

I think my report ⑩ was liked because I interviewed ⑪ lots of the staff ⑫ who work at the hotel. I think this made my writing more interesting because I described how they felt. My editor said she liked it very much.

⑩ تقرير
⑪ أجريت مقابلات
⑫ الموظفين - العاملين
⑬ شخص اجتماعي

As you can see, my job is very exciting, and there's something new every day. I am quite sociable ⑬, so I enjoy interviewing people and chatting to other journalists about news stories. However, I also like to be quiet at home when I write my news articles. I love living in Egypt, too. It's fun, and I have a lot of friends here. I'm very happy!

Activity Book Text

Blog!

Upload Download Home

My name is Waleed Bashir and I'm a sports journalist ①. I love my job because I love sport! Every morning, I go to the newspaper office and I have meetings with ② my editor and other journalists. Then we decide which games I need to watch.



If it's a football game, I arrive about three hours before the game starts. Journalists from television, radio, and newspapers sit together in a place that's called the press box ③. We all chat ④ while we get ready. During the game, I make a lot of notes ⑤.

At the end of the game, I watch the interviews with the club managers ⑥ and players, and I make more notes. I go back to the press box and I start writing my story ⑦. I include what the players say, details of the game, and my opinion of the game. I finish the article ⑧ in the press box and send it to my newspaper office to print. All the articles are sent from the press box to save time ⑨.

① صحفي رياضي
② أعقد اجتماعات
③ مقصورة الصحافة (الصحفيين)
④ ندردش
⑤ ملاحظات
⑥ مدراء النادي
⑦ خبر
⑧ مقالة
⑨ لتوفير الوقت

Exercises on Lessons 3 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

editor – staff – stories – international – interviewed

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an ❶ .... journalist. Last Monday, I was so happy. One of my articles was chosen to be one of the main ❷ .... It was about a fire in a hotel – luckily, nobody was hurt. I think my report was liked because I ❸ .... lots of the staff who work at the hotel. I think this made my writing more interesting because I described how they felt. My ❹ .... said she liked it very much.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:



a pity – That's too – Oh, no

Amira : Hi, Fareeda.
Fareeda : Hi, Amira. Are you OK?
Amira : Not really. I hurt my hand when I was playing volleyball.
Fareeda : ❶ ....! ❷ .... bad. I'm sorry.
Amira : Now I can't play in the school team next week.
Fareeda : What ❸ ....! Don't be sad. Come to my house and we can watch a movie together.
Amira : Thanks, Fareeda. That would be nice.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:



Better luck next time. – done! – pleased for you! – That's awesome – wow!

Seleem : Hi, Tarek.
Tarek : Hi, Seleem. You look happy!

Seleem : I am! I passed my science test with 72%.

Tarek : Oh, ❶ .... ❷ .... news.

Seleem : Thanks! I'm really happy because I usually find science very difficult.

Tarek : Well ❸ .... I'm so ❹ .... I didn't pass my science test. I have to do it again.

Seleem : I'm sorry, Tarek. ❺ .... I'm sure you'll pass next time.

Tarek : Thanks, Seleem.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism at university. I think a journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate well to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Sylvia lives in (America - England - Egypt).
2. Sylvia studied journalism at (school - university - work).
3. The opposite of the underlined word "international" is (national - foreign - famous).

B Answer these questions:

4. What did Sylvia decide to focus on at school?
   ▶ ....
5. What does a journalist need to be good at?
   ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. you - can - What - see - the photos - in?
   ▶ .... ?
2. That's - no! - Oh, - bad - too!
   ▶ .... !
3. was - Why - excited - Sylvia - Monday - last?
   ▶ .... ?
4. pleased - so - I'm - you - for!
   ▶ .... !
5. university - at - journalism - studied - I.
   ▶ ....
6. Egypt - in - Does - living - like - Sylvia?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

"Would you like to be a journalist?"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** **Why - Why not**

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 5 Language

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



investigate يتحرى - يُحقِّق



peaceful (v) هادئ - مريح



promise يَعِد - يعهد



fertilizer سماد - مخصب

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

local newspaper	صحيفة محلية	**fishermen**	صيادون
truth	حقيقة	**polluted river**	نهر مُلَوَّث
notes	ملاحظات	**dead fish**	أسماك نافقة (ميتة)
factories	مصانع	**chemicals**	مواد كيميائية - كيماويات

Prepositions

went **for** walks	ذهبوا للتمشية	**pick up** the trash	يلتقط (يجمع) القمامة
far **from**	بعيدًا عن	**at** the side of the river	على ضفة النهر
find **out**	يكتشف - يعرف	**by** the river	بجانب النهر

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

investigate	: to find out the facts about something
peaceful	: very quiet and relaxing
promise	: to say that something will be done

Term 2

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
investigate	يتحرى	investigated	investigated
pollute	يلوث	polluted	polluted
promise	يَعِد	promised	promised
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
die	يموت	died	died
change	يُغَيِّر - يتغير	changed	changed
kill	يقتل	killed	killed
test	يَخْتَبِر	tested	tested
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up	cleaned up
print	يَطبع	printed	printed
check	يفحص	checked	checked
publish	ينشر	published	published

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get to	يصل إلى	got to	got to
come back	يعود	came back	come back
feed	يُطعِم	fed	fed
know	يعرف	knew	known
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out

Lesson Notes

- die ➤➤➤➤ dying
- The fish are dying.

لاحظ أن: عند إضافة (ing) لفعل منتهٍ بـ (ie) تُحول الـ (ie) إلى (y) ثم نضيف الـ (ing).



Read and learn



Reporter Nadine saves the river



Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin, Remas, at their home. It was a peaceful ❶ place near a river. She and her cousin always went for walks by the river, and talked to the fishermen ❷ there.

Last year, when she visited, things were different. When Nadine got to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too.

"Where are all the fishermen?" she asked her cousin.

"They've stopped coming here," said Remas, " and the fish are dying ❸."

"But why?" asked Nadine.

"We don't know," said Remas.

They went home feeling sad. Nadine's uncle is the editor at the local newspaper ❹.

"Uncle," said Nadine at dinner, "I'd like to be a news reporter ❺. Can I work for you? I want to find out why the fish are dying. We need to do something

❶ هادئ - ساكن
❷ الصيادين
❸ ميِّت
❹ صحيفة (جريدة) محلية
❺ مراسل صحفي - مراسل أخبار

to protect the river, or it will be destroyed. All the fish will be killed, and the fishermen will never come back."

Uncle listened carefully, and agreed with Nadine. He went to the river with her the next day.

"Look at the color of the water," he said "That tells me the water is polluted ⑥. There could be chemicals ⑦ from factories or from farms. The chemicals are dangerous for wildlife. The wildlife will all be destroyed I'd like you to write notes about the problem, and take some photos," he said.

Nadine and Uncle walked up the river and saw there were some factories and farms. Then they went home, and Nadine wrote her notes for her news report ⑧. Uncle read her notes and said, "This is very good, but you are going home tomorrow. I promise ⑨ I'll send my reporter to investigate ⑩ this week. Your notes will be sent to her."

One week later, Nadine woke up early in the morning. She went to the laptop in the living room and saw an email from her uncle. He told her to look at the website of his newspaper.

And there it was – the full story of the polluted river! Uncle's reporter interviewed people at the factory and on the farms. One of the farms was using a new fertilizer ⑪ that wasn't tested ⑫ correctly. It was killing the plants on the land and the fish in the river. The farmers changed their fertilizer very soon after. Now, the land and the river are starting to get better.

Nadine was so pleased to read the article. She was also very happy when she read in the paragraph at the end, "Thanks very much to our young reporter, Nadine Shawky. Nadine helped to save our river by asking us to investigate why the fish were dying. Now, the river will be cleaned up. The fish will be healthy again!"

⑥ مُلَوَّث
⑦ مواد كيميائية - كيماويات
⑧ تقرير إخباري (صحفي)
⑨ أعِد - أتعهد
⑩ يُحَقِّق
⑪ سماد - مُخَصِّب
⑫ يُختَبَر

Grammar Study



Future simple passive

المستقبل البسيط المبني للمجهول

- **We start a passive sentence with the most important information.**
- نبدأ جملة المجهول بأهم معلومة (المراد التركيز عليها).
- **The subject of the sentence is usually unknown or unimportant.**
- فاعل جملة المجهول عادةً ما يكون غير معروف أو ليس له أهمية.
- قاعدة تحويل زمن المستقبل البسيط: **will + be + pp**

Examples:

- The children will clean up the river.
  - The river will be cleaned up by the children.
- People will destroy the wildlife.
  - The wildlife will be destroyed.

Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

walks – fishermen – peaceful – home – river

Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin, Remas, at their ❶ .... It was a ❷ .... place near a river. She and her cousin always went for ❸ .... by the river, and talked to the ❹ .... there.



2 Read the following text and answer the questions:



When Nadine stayed with her uncle, aunt, and cousin last year, she saw that there were lots of fishermen there. There were no animals and birds by the river. She wanted to do something to protect the river, so she took her uncle to see it. He said, "The wildlife will all be destroyed." He asked Nadine to write some notes and take some photos. When Nadine went home, her uncle, who is a newspaper editor, gave her notes to a reporter. Then he sent the reporter to investigate the problem. One week later, Nadine read an article on her uncle's newspaper website. Her uncle's journalist discovered that one of the farmers was using a fertilizer that was polluting the river. It was killing the plants and the fish. When the farmer stopped using the fertilizer, the river started to get better. Soon, the river will be cleaned up and the fish will be healthy again.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There were no animals and birds by the (lake - river - sea).
2. Nadine's uncle asked her to write some notes and take some (photos - reports - articles).
3. The opposite of the underlined word "protect" is (destroy - save - check).

B Answer these questions:

4. Who did Nadine's uncle send to investigate the problem?
   ▶ ....
5. What will happen to the river now?
   ▶ ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Your notes will be (sending - send - sent) to the reporter.
2. We need to do something to protect the river, or it will be (destroys - destroyed - destroy).
3. All the fish will be (killed - kills - kill) in that polluted water.
4. They will never (coming - come - came) back again.
5. The wildlife will (is - was - be) destroyed if we don't stop pollution.

6. Now, the river will be (cleans - cleaned - clean) up.
7. She (will be feed - will feed - be feed) the chickens every day.
8. The chickens (will be fed - will fed - be fed) every day.
9. He promised he will (be sent - send - sent) a reporter to investigate.
10. What will be (done - does - do) to help the wildlife?
11. The reporter (will publish - will be published - be published) the article on the newspaper website.
12. The article (will publish - will be published - be published) on the newspaper website.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. was - It - place - a peaceful - a river - near.
▶ ....
2. like to - I'd - be - reporter - a news.
▶ ....
3. you - for - work - I - Can?
▶ .... ?
4. be - fish - killed - All the - will.
▶ ....
5. her notes - wrote - Nadine - report - news - for her.
▶ ....

5 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nada:

Tell her about an article you read about pollution. Tell her how pollution is dangerous to the environment and how we can stop it. Your email address is mayar@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is nada@school.net.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

Lesson 6 Writing: A news report



The news report should contain

newspaper's name	اسم الصحيفة	caption	وصف أو توضيح يُكتَب تحت صورة
headline	عنوان رئيسي	main text	نص رئيسي - متن الخبر
photo	صورة	reporter's name	اسم المراسل



The main text of the news report consists of

introduction	مقدمة	conclusion	خاتمة
further details	تفاصيل إضافية		

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

school director	مدير المدرسة	event	حدث
work hard	يعمل بِجد	science fair	معرض العلوم
information	معلومات	talent show	عرض مواهب
proud of	فخور بـ	give out prizes	يوزع جوائز

sports day	يوم رياضي	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة
the sports area	منطقة (صالة) الرياضة	basketball	كرة السلة
race	سباق	tug-of-war	شدّ الحبل
long jump	الوثب الطويل	the 100-meter running	سباق الركض لمسافة 100 متر
high jump	القفز العالي	the winning teams	الفِرَق الفائزة

Adjectives

awesome	مذهل - رائع	positive	إيجابي
fantastic	رائع	negative	سلبي
amazing	مدهش	tired	مُتعَب
popular	شائع - رائج	exciting	ممتع - مثير

Activity Book

success	نجاح	topic	موضوع
concert	حفل موسيقي	art show	عرض فني
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية - أوركسترا	junk modeling competition	مسابقة عمل نماذج من المخلفات (الخردة)
musical instruments	آلات موسيقية	play (n)	مسرحية
choir	كورال	give a presentation	يلقي كلمة افتتاحية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
decorate	يزين	decorated	decorated
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
play	يعزف	played	played
plan	يخطط	planned	planned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
take part	يشارك	took part	taken part
give out	يوزع	gave out	given out

Tip!

How to write a news report

- To write the main text of the news report, follow this structure: introduction, further details, and conclusion.
- Write in the past tense: Our school sports day was last Thursday.
- Use direct quotes from people who were at the event: "I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make today fantastic."
- Include your opinion by using adjectives: Our sports day was amazing!

- لكتابة النص الرئيسي للتقرير الإخباري، اتبِع هذا التركيب: **المقدمة**، ثم تفاصيل إضافية، ثم **الخاتمة**.
- اكتب بصيغة الماضي:

Our school sports day was last Thursday.

- استخدم اقتباسات مباشرة من الأشخاص الذين حضروا الحدث:

"I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make today fantastic."

- قم بإدراج رأيك باستخدام الصفات:

Our sports day was amazing!

Note that:

introduction	: In this paragraph, we give important information about the event. It can answer who, what, why, where, and when questions.
further details	: In this paragraph, we give more details about the event.
conclusion	: In this paragraph, we give final information and opinions.



Read and learn

newspaper's name
اسم الصحيفة



headline
عنوان رئيسي

photo
صورة

caption
وصف توضيحي للصورة

main text
نص رئيسي

Marley School News

Best school sports day ever!



The tug-of-war race at the end of the afternoon

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated ❶ the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned ❷ all the races ❸. We think all the parents loved it, too!

Many girls and boys took part ❹, and there were many different things to see. Lots of people watched the exciting football, volleyball, and basketball games. Well done to all the winning teams! The races, such as the 100-meter running, long jump ❺, and high jump ❻ were popular, too. Reem, from Year 3, won first place ❼ for her high jump. Reem's highest jump was one meter!

❶ زيّن - زخرف
❷ خطّطوا
❸ سباقات - منافسات
❹ شارك - اشترك
❺ الوثب الطويل
❻ القفز العالي
❼ فازت بالمركز الأول
❽ مديرة المدرسة

Luckily, the weather was great for our sports day. The school director ❽, Mrs Dorriya, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave out prizes. She said, "I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a fun tug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home tired, but happy. Our sports day was amazing!

Story by Waleed

reporter's name
اسم المراسل

Activity Book Text

newspaper's name
اسم الصحيفة

IBRAHIM SCHOOL NEWSPAPER

headline
عنوان رئيسي

School concert a success!

photo
صورة



caption
وصف توضيحي للصورة

Young violin players

main text
نص رئيسي

Our school concert was on Saturday. It was amazing! Miss Laila's class put 150 chairs in the school hall and tickets were sold on the school website. Mr Amir's class decorated the hall with flowers. Everyone was very excited.

Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical instruments including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The choir has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music!

The concert started at 5 pm. First, the school director Mrs Mariam gave a presentation. She said, "This is a very special evening and I'm very proud of everyone". Then the orchestra played classical music. It was fantastic! There was a break in the middle of the concert, and some students served cold drinks and cakes. Then in the second half of the concert, the orchestra played and the choir sang. It was an awesome evening, and everyone went home feeling happy.

By Reem Mansour

reporter's name
اسم المراسل



Grammar Study



The possessive ('s) صيغة الملكية

We use an apostrophe before the letter s ('s) to say that something belongs to someone.

نستخدم ('s) للتعبير عن الملكية.

- That's Omar's bike (دراجة عمر).

We also use it to talk about family and friends.

كما يمكن استخدامها للحديث عن العائلة أو الأصدقاء.

- Laila's aunt (عمة ليلى) is an engineer.



Exercises on Lesson 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

decorated – planned – took – races – awesome

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was ❶ .... ! Mr Kamal's class ❷ .... the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the ❸ .... We think all the parents loved it, too! Many girls and boys ❹ .... part, and there were many different things to see.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Mr (Amir's - Amir is - Amirs) class decorated the hall with flowers.
2. (Reem is - Reems - Reem's) highest jump was one meter!
3. We're in Miss (Amals - Amals' - Amal's) class.

4. There are three books on the desk. They're (Gameela's - Gameela is - Gameelas') books.

5. Shehab plays football. (Shehabs - Shehabs' - Shehab's) two footballs are in his room.

6. Mr (Abdullah's - Abdullah is - Abdullahs') students are doing a test.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

instruments – play – presentation – concert – choir

Our school ❶ .... was on Saturday. It was amazing! Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical ❷ .... including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The ❸ .... has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music! The concert started at 5 pm. The school director Mrs Mariam gave a ❹ .... before it started.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. What type - it - of - is - text?

▶ .... ?

2. class - area - Mr Kamal's - the sports - decorated.

▶ ....

3. of all - so proud - I'm - of you.

▶ ....

4. describe - the text - does - What?

▶ .... ?

5. was - Our - day - amazing - sports!

▶ .... !

5 **Write a news report about an exciting event in your community:**

Look at these ideas to help you.

- Choose from the ideas in the box or think of your own.

(an art show - a community environmental project - a sports competition - a play)

Remember these things:

- Write three paragraphs: introduction, further details, and a conclusion.
- Write in the past tense. Try to use the passive.
- Write what people said at the event.
- Include your opinion, e.g. It was fantastic! It was an awesome evening.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Term 2

Lesson 7 Story: Farmer Sameh



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



barn حظيرة



shade ظِل



summer فصل الصيف



fall فصل الخريف



season فصل - موسم



nature الطبيعة



leaves أوراق الشجر



terrible storm عاصفة مروعة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

farmer	مُزارع	**land**	أرض
fava beans	حبوب الفول	**lots of space**	مساحة كبيرة
figs	تين	**market**	سُوق
dates	بلح - تَمر	**female sheep**	إناث الأغنام
honey	عسل	**wood**	خشب
bees	نحل	**bricks**	طوب
desserts	حلوى	**sunlight**	ضوء الشمس
keep chickens	يربي دجاج	**space**	مساحة - متسع
have babies	تلد صغارًا	**summary**	ملخص - تلخيص

Prepositions

on the farm	في المزرعة	worried about	قلق بشأن
look after	يعتني ب	made of wood	مصنوع من الخشب
burn down	يُدمّر احتراقًا	through the summer	خلال فصل الصيف

Adjectives

delicious	لذيذ	dark	مظلمة
wooden	خشبي - مصنوع من الخشب	old	قديم
safe	آمن	rainy	ممطر
ready	جاهزة	bright	لامع - زاهي

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

barn	: a building on a farm for animals to sleep in
fall	: the time in the year when the leaves fall from the trees
shade	: a dark area with no sunlight
summer	: the hottest season of the year

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
shout	يصيح	shouted	shouted
reply	يجيب	replied	replied
worry	يقلق	worried	worried
save	ينقذ	saved	saved

Term 2

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
keep	يربي	kept	kept
build	يبني	built	built
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
shine	تُشرق	shone (shined)	shone (shined)
come	يأتي	came	come
burn	يحترق	burned (burnt)	burned (burnt)

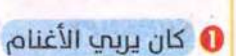


Read and learn



Story: Farmer Sameh

Farmer Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They didn't have a lot of land, but they had enough to grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep ❶ and chickens, and the children helped him look after them. Amina grew fava beans ❷ so she could make delicious ful mudamas. Monir and Menna had some bees, so they could have honey. With the honey, and the figs ❸ and dates ❹ from their trees, they could make awesome desserts ❺.



❶ كان يربي الأغنام
❷ حبوب الفول
❸ التين
❹ التمر - البلح
❺ حلويات
❻ حظيرة
❼ الطوب

The family had an old barn ❻ where they kept the sheep. It was very important on cold and rainy days, or when the female sheep were having babies.

Sameh's friends, Hazem and Fareed, were worried about the barn. They thought it was too old and not safe.

"Sameh," said Hazem, "your barn is very old and made of wood – it could easily burn." "Why don't you build a better barn from bricks ❼?" asked Hazem.



Sameh replied, "Because this year, I need to buy more sheep."

That year, summer ❽ was very hot. There was no rain at all. The sun shone ❾ every day, and the sky was bright blue. The wooden barn got very hot from the sun. One day, it started burning. Sameh was at the market, but luckily, Amina was near and she saved the sheep from the barn. Hazem and Fareed came running. "Get some water from the kitchen!" shouted ❿ Hazem to the children. "We need to save the barn!"

But Amina wasn't worried. Everybody and all the animals were safe. After the barn burned down, they all sat and drank water. Fareed asked, "Where will you put the sheep now?"

❽ الصيف
❾ كانت تشرق
❿ صاح - صرخ
⓫ الظل
⓬ الخريف
⓭ عاصفة

Amina replied, "We have some trees, so they can stay in the shade ⓫ until the new barn is ready."

"Will you build another barn?" asked Hazem. "Oh yes," said Amina, "it'll be fine."

Sameh and his family worked hard through the summer. They built a new, bigger barn with bricks. In the fall ⓬, the new barn was ready. It was big enough for all their sheep. Their friends came to see the new barn.

"Well done," said Hazem

"This new barn is great," said Fareed.

Later that year, there was a terrible storm ⓭. Sameh and Amina put the sheep in the new barn. Hazem and Fareed came running with their sheep.

"Please can we put our sheep here?"

Hazem asked. "Yes, of course," said Amina. "There's lots of space," Sameh said. "I was sad and worried when our old barn burned down. Now, we have this big, fantastic barn!"

Everybody laughed and agreed.

Activity Book Text

Story: How many people talk to the old man?

An old man was sitting in the shade ❶ of his favorite tree. He saw a young man walking towards him. The young man stopped and asked the old man a question. "Do you know the people in this village? What are they like?" he said.

The old man looked at him and replied, "What are the people like in the village you come from?"

"Oh, they are unfriendly ❷. I don't talk to them," said the young man. "I think you'll find the people in this village are the same," said the old man quietly.

The young man looked upset ❸. He said goodbye and walked slowly to the village.

The next day, while the old man was sitting in the shade of his favorite tree, he saw another young man walking towards him. The young man stopped and asked the old man a question. "Do you know the people in this village? What are they like?"

The old man looked at him and replied, "What are the people like in the village you come from?"

"Oh, they are very friendly ❹ and kind. I talk to all of them and I like them a lot," said the young man.

"I think you'll find the people in this village are the same," said the old man quietly.

The young man smiled happily. He said goodbye and walked quickly to the village.

❶ الظل
❷ غير ودودين
❸ بدا منزعجًا
❹ ودود

Exercises on Lesson 7

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

build – barn – sheep – farm – honey

Farmer Sameh lived on a small farm with his family. He kept ❶ .... and cows, and his children kept bees for ❷ .... Sameh had an old ❸ .... where he kept his sheep. His friends Fareed and Hazem were worried about the old barn. They told Sameh to buy a new one. Sameh couldn't ❹ .... a new barn because he needed to buy more sheep.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

storm – shade – space – burning – barn

Farmer Sameh had a barn. One day, Sameh's barn started ❶ ....! They saved the sheep, but they couldn't save the barn. While Sameh and his wife Amina built a bigger barn with wood, the sheep sat in the ❷ .... of the trees. In the winter, the barn was ready. Later that year, there was a terrible ❸ .... and other farmers came running with their sheep. They asked to put their sheep in the barn. Sameh's new barn was big enough for everyone's sheep. He agreed because there was lots of ❹ ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. did - and - Sameh - What animals - have - his family?
▶ .... ?
2. Sameh - had - happy - a very - life - Farmer.
▶ ....
3. can - They - stay - in - shade - the.
▶ ....
4. will - put - you - Where - sheep - the?
▶ .... ?
5. sheep - kept - chickens - Sameh - and.
▶ ....

Unit 6 Test 2



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Sameh lived on a (city - boat - farm - town) with his wife and his children.
2. They grow food to eat and a little to (make - sell - eat - buy) at the market.
3. Sameh kept (goats - cows - horses - sheep) and chickens.
4. Amina grew fava (beans - peas - bees - pies) so she could make delicious ful mudamas.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

journalist – editor – box – newspaper – press

My name is Waleed Bashir and I'm a sports ❶ .... I love my job because I love sport! Every morning, I go to the ❷ .... office and I have meetings with my ❸ .... and other journalists. Then we decide which games I need to watch. If it's a football game, I arrive about three hours before the game starts. Journalists from television, radio, and newspapers sit together in a place that's called the ❹ .... box. We all chat while we get ready.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Newspapers are an important source of information. Many people begin their day by reading the paper. In this way, they learn what is going on in the world. There are newspapers to satisfy every reader. Most newspapers have several sections. In addition to the front page with the most important news, there are the sports section, the society page, the comics, the amusement section, a business page and others. Magazines are another important source of information. Some magazines are published weekly; others are put out monthly.

There are news magazines, literary magazines and magazines for special interests such as photography, sports and art. Some are for men, others for women, and there's a selection of children's magazines too.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Newspapers are an important source of (health - sports - information - joy).
2. The (front - back - middle - second) page is the most important one in a paper.
3. The underlined word "sections" means (parts - magazines - newspapers - readers).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why do a lot of people begin their day by reading the paper?
▶ ....
5. Name three types of magazines.
▶ ....

The Reader Transportation today (4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Ships could travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road. ( )
2. The Suez Canal was opened in 1896. ( )
3. The Suez Canal is about 193 kilometers long. ( )
4. The Suez Canal is a very important sea route for businesses. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Why was the Suez Canal built?
▶ ....
6. What does the Suez Canal connect?
▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. The pandas (were - will - is - was) put into special areas.
2. (Will - Are - Were - Is) the area designed to be safe enough?
3. All the news stories are (sends - sending - sent - send) to the editor.
4. Will more things (sell - are sold - were sold - be sold) online in the future?
5. Miss (Laila is - Laila - Laila's - Lailas') class put 150 chairs in the school hall.
6. Dangerous fertilizers won't be (used - uses - using - use) again.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. know - you - this village - Do - the people - in?
   ▶ ....?
2. first - place - Reem - high jump - won - for her.
   ▶ ....
3. will be - to help - wildlife - What - the - done?
   ▶ ....?

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Yousef: (5Ms)

Tell him about a sports day you enjoyed at school. Tell him what games you played, what competitions you won, and how the day was. Your email address is amgad@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is yousef@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

Review 3 Test 3 on Units (5-6)

Total
30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Junko Tabei was a famous and brave (doctor - editor - adventurer - officer).
2. She loved (climbing - reading - collecting - protecting) mountains.
3. She trained hard on the mountains from the age of (seven - eight - nine - ten).
4. In 1975, she finally reached the top of (Mount Everest - Antarctica - the Sahara Desert - Cairo Tower).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

journalist - fed - inside - zookeeper - cheetahs

Hesham : Hello, Kareem! I'm here to interview you about your job at the zoo as a ❶ ....

Kareem : Cool! What do you want to know?

Hesham : How often are the animals ❷ ....?

Kareem : It depends on the animal, but usually twice a day. They love their food!

Hesham : Do they sleep outside or ❸ ....?

Kareem : We bring a lot of the animals inside at night. But the big cats, like the ❹ .... and tigers, are happy to stay outside.

Hesham : Thank you, Kareem.

Kareem : You're welcome.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Hi, I'm Rana. I've just got back from Luxor with my family! When we got to Luxor, we filled in the form at the hotel and went to our room. It was very nice and comfortable. Mom woke me up early so we could visit my uncle. He lives outside the city, so we left at 7 am. We figured out a good route, and we enjoyed the countryside. We loved being at Uncle's house,

and we had a delicious lunch there. On the way back to Luxor, we dropped off Uncle's friend at the bus stop. It was a fun day. I wish we lived nearer to Uncle so we could see him more often!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Rana has just got back from (Aswan - Alexandria - Luxor - Giza).
2. When they got to Luxor, Rana and her family filled (off - in - on - at) the form at the hotel.
3. The underlined word "figured out" means (stopped - discovered - completed - took).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why did Rana's mom wake her up early?
   ▶ ....
5. Where did they drop off Uncle's friend?
   ▶ ....

The Reader The Silk Road (4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Traveling on the Silk Road was easy. ( )
2. The Silk Road reached the Mediterranean Sea over time. ( )
3. Silk was a very cheap material. ( )
4. The Silk Road made it impossible for countries to trade goods and share ideas ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Where did the Silk Road start?
   ▶ ....
6. Why was the Silk Road sometimes dangerous?
   ▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. We dropped (on - at - off - in) our friend at the train station.
2. Giant pandas (is - are - was - were) put in danger some years ago.
3. The wildlife will be (destroy - destroyed - destroying - destroys) by people.
4. That's (Omar's - Omars - Omars' - Omar is) bike.
5. Astronauts (teaches - teach - are taught - taught) how to fix a spaceship by teachers.
6. The article (checks - will check - were checked - will be checked) by the editor.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. space - travel - We - spaceship - into - in a.
   ▶ .... ?
2. Her - finished - homework - be - won't - this evening.
   ▶ ....
3. trip - were - What - the - challenges - of the?
   ▶ .... ?

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"International news stories"

Ideas to help you:

- What is that news story?
- Why does it interest you?
- When did it happen?
- Where did it happen?
- What are the main details?
- What do you think will happen next?

....
....
....
....
....



Young inventors working hard!

Making a new world

صُنْع عالم جديد

Unit 7

In this unit, I will ....

- read and find specific information.
- understand and use the second conditional.
- listen for specific details.
- understand a sequence of events in a text.
- understand and use (not) as ... as to compare.
- describe objects using sounds/looks/ feels like.
- write about a solution to a problem, including reasons.
- understand key words and phrases in a story.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Words related to inventions:** angelfish, edible, coral reef, cutlery, glow-in-the dark, bike path, filter, straw, decompose, existed, store (v), bacteria, prevent disease, driverless, interactive, planetarium, control (v), plow, ink, toothpaste, mint paste, engines, sea life **Words from the story:** birdfeeder, birdseed, knot, loop, clothes pins, gatepost, rope
Language	**Second conditional:** If I had a flying car, I would travel all around the world! I would travel around the world if I had a flying car. **(not) as ... as:** Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are today.
Reading	A blog; a dialog; a story about a school trip; a project; a story about somebody with a problem
Writing	Writing a solution to a problem, including giving reasons
Speaking	Describing what things look/sound/smell like
Listening	An interview with a scientist
Life skills	**Problem-solving:** the problem of plastic in our oceans
Values	**Curiosity**
Issues and challenges	**Environmental responsibility**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Science:** appreciating inventions which help our environment

Lesson 1 People and the planet



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



edible cutlery
أدوات مائدة صالحة للأكل



glow-in-the-dark bike paths
مسارات دراجات تتوهّج في الظلام



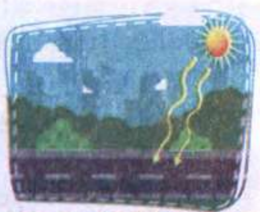
filter straws
أنابيب تنقية



prevent diseases
يقي من الأمراض



decompose
يتحلل



store
يخزن



bacteria
بكتيريا

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

planet	كوكب	**my own inventions**	اختراعاتي الخاصة
environment	بيئة	**cycling**	راكبو الدراجات
ocean	محيط	**cyclists**	راكبي الدراجات
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	**blog**	مدونة إلكترونية
material	مادة	**during the day**	أثناء (خلال) النهار
type	نوع	**comments**	تعليقات

takeaway food	وجبات سريعة	flavors	نكهات
forks	شوكات	flour	دقيق
knives	سكاكين	rice	أرز
spoons	ملاعق	plastic	بلاستيك

Prepositions

Welcome to	مرحبًا بكم في	at night	في الليل
throw ... away	يتخلص - يرمي	in the dark	في الظلام
instead of	بدلاً من	in the ground	في الأرض
for a long time	لوقت طويل جدًا	pass through	يمر من خلال
get into	يصل إلى	around the world	حول العالم
good for	جيد بالنسبة لـ	caused by	ناتجة عن

Adjectives

cool	رائع	great	رائع - عظيم
popular	رائجة - شائعة	special	خاص
different	مختلف	tasty	حَسَن المذاق
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
dirty	قذر	fit	لائق بدنيًا

Activity Book

organic things	أشياء عضوية	remote village	قرية نائية
living things	كائنات حية	environmentally-friendly	صديق للبيئة
encourage	يشجع	food stall	كُشك طعام
description	وَصْف	garbage can	سلة مهملات

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

bacteria	: something that can cause disease
decompose	: to break into small parts
disease	: a sickness
prevent	: to stop something from happening
store	: to keep
edible cutlery	: something that you can eat
filter straw	: something that can stop people getting sick
glow-in-the-dark bike path	: something that can help people cycle safely at night

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
stay	يبقى	stayed	stayed
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
glow	يتوهج - يضيء	glowed	glowed
store	يُخزن	stored	stored
solve	يحل	solved	solved
cause	يُسبب	caused	caused
remove	يُزيل	removed	removed
fix	يُصلح	fixed	fixed
cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled	cycled
prevent	يمنع	prevented	prevented
decompose	يتحلل	decomposed	decomposed
improve	يحَسِّن	improved	improved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
get sick	يمرض	got sick	got sick
get bigger	يكبر	got bigger	got bigger
make	يجعل - يصنع	made	made
know	يعرف	knew	known
throw	يقذف - يرمي	threw	thrown
keep	يحفظ - يحتفظ	kept	kept
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
break	يكسر	broke	broken

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The Ancient Egyptians were famous for their **exciting inventions**, such as ink! They used it to **write** and draw **on** papyrus.

اشتهر المصريون القدماء باختراعاتهم الشيقة، مثل الحبر! حيث استخدموه في الكتابة والرسم على ورق البردي.







Read and learn

People and our planet

Welcome to my inventions blog ❶! I love learn**ing about** inventions that help the planet. I really want to make my **own inventions** when I'm older. Here are some cool **inventions** you might **not know** about.

❶ مُدوَّنة ابتكارات **(اختراعات)**

Edible cutlery ❷

Having takeaway food ❸ with friends and family is great. However, plastic knives ❹, forks ❺, and spoons ❻ are bad for the planet. We usually use plastic cutlery ❼ once, then throw it away. Plastic doesn't decompose ❽, so it stays in the ground for a long time ❾. Some plastic can then get into the ocean ❿. Lots of people want to find a better idea, and cutlery that you can eat is becoming popular. This can be made with special rice, or flour, and some edible cutlery comes in different flavors ⓫, too!

Glow-in-the-dark bike paths ⓬

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel – it keeps you fit, and it's good for the environment. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which glows ⓭ in the dark. It stores ⓮ solar energy ⓯ during the day. Then, at night, the path glows softly. Cyclists ⓰ can see where they are going in the dark. It's safe, and it's good for the environment!

❷ أدوات مائدة صالحة للأكل
❸ وجبات سريعة
❹ سكاكين
❺ شوكات
❻ ملاعق
❼ أدوات مائدة بلاستيكية
❽ يتحلَّل
❾ لفترة طويلة
❿ المحيط
⓫ نكهات
⓬ مسارات للدراجات تتوهج (تضيء) في الظلام
⓭ تتوهَّج - تضيء
⓮ تُخَزِّن
⓯ الطاقة الشمسية
⓰ سائقو الدراجات - الدرّاجون
⓱ شفّاطات التنقية (التصفية)
⓲ حَسَن المذاق
⓳ بكتيريا
⓴ وَقَت من (مَنَعَت) الأمراض

Filter straws ⓱

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty ⓲. However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria ⓳ from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have prevented diseases ⓴ in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

What problems do you think we need to fix on our planet? Tell me in the comments!







Term 2

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: 

bacteria - decompose - disease - prevent - Store

Drinking dirty water can cause ❶ .... because dirty water has a lot of ❷ .... in it. To ❸ .... yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water. ❹ .... fresh food in a refrigerator, or a cool dry place in your kitchen. The food will stay fresh and it won't start to ❺ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

decompose – cutlery – edible – planet – flavors

Having takeaway food with friends and family is great. However, plastic knives, forks, and spoons are bad for the ❶ .... We usually use plastic cutlery once, then throw it away. Plastic doesn't ❷ ...., so it stays in the ground for a long time. Lots of people want to find better ❸ .... that you can eat with. That is possible. Some people invented some ❹ .... cutlery. This can be made with special rice, or flour, and comes in different flavors, too!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel; it keeps you fit, and it's good for the environment. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which glows in the dark. These paths are called "glow-in-the-dark bike paths". These paths store solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the paths glow softly. Cyclists can see where they are going in the dark. These paths are safe, and they're good for the environment!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. We all know that cycling is a good way to (play - practice - travel).

2. The new paths store (solar - wind - tidal) energy during the day.
3. The underlined word "fit" means (unfit - healthy - fast).

B Answer these questions:

4. What are the new paths called? ▶ ....
5. How are the new paths good? ▶ ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. straw - A filter - dangerous - removes - from water - bacteria.
▶ ....
2. invention - you - would - to use - Which - like?
▶ .... ?
3. a good - Cycling - travel - is - way - to.
▶ ....
4. learning - love - inventions - I - about.
▶ ....
5. pass - The bacteria - straw - can't - the - through.
▶ ....
6. important - invention - Which - is - most - the?
▶ .... ?

5 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

The invention of "filter straws"

▸ Ideas to help you: solve problems - dirty water - remove bacteria - prevent diseases

....
....
....
....
....





Lesson 2 Language

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





science competition مسابقة للعلوم

invention اختراع





magazines مجلات

time machine آلة سفر عبر الزمن

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	**the pyramids**	الأهرامات
the future	المستقبَل	**enter**	يَدخُل
person	شخص	**entry**	مَدخَل
junk food	طعام غير صحي - وجبات سريعة	**weight**	وزن

Prepositions

work **in** groups	يعملون في مجموعات	**from** the past	من الماضي
talk **about**	يتكلم عن	look **like**	تبدو مثل
look online **for** ideas	يبحث عن أفكار عبر الإنترنت	a different time **in** history	حقبة تاريخية مختلفة
go **back**	يعود - يرجع	put **on**	يرتدي

Sentences & Expressions

make a poster	يصنع ملصق	draw a picture	يرسم صورة
would like to	يرغب في	a period of time	فترة من الوقت
It sounds fun!	هذا يبدو **ممتعًا!**	form of trans**portation**	وسيلة من وسائل النقل
win a prize	يفوز بجائزة	look in magazines	يبحث في المجلات

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
design	يصمم	designed	designed
wonder	يتساءل	wondered	wondered
look like	تُشبه	looked like	looked like
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
control	يتحكم في	controlled	controlled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
win	يفوز	won	won
build	يبني	built	built
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
meet	يقابل	met	met



Read and learn

What is a time machine?





Ms Samira : OK, today we're going to do something exciting. I want you to imagine ❶ that there's a science competition ❷. If you wanted to win a science competition, what would you invent ❸ and why? You can work in groups to talk about your ideas, then make a poster ❹ about your invention.

Nagwa : Can we look online ❺ for ideas?



Ms Samira : Yes, you can. You can look in ❻ magazines, too!

Reem, Nagwa, and Lara work in a group.



Reem : Well, if I entered a science competition, I'd design a time machine. I'd love to travel to a different time in history.



Nagwa : That's a great idea. If you designed a time machine ❼, where would you go?



Lara : Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.



Reem : If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt ❽! I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.



Nagwa : I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine. I'd go to the future to see what inventions people have!

❶ تتخيل - تتصور
❷ مسابقة
❸ يبتكر - يخترع
❹ مُلصَق (بوستر)
❺ يبحث على الإنترنت
❻ يبحث في
❼ آلة زمن
❽ مصر القديمة





Lara : Let's make our competition entry about a time machine, then! If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places. I think that idea would win the competition!

Nagwa : OK, great. First, let's draw a picture. I wonder ❾ what a time machine would look like ...

❾ أتساءل



Grammar Study

The second conditional (If)

الحالة الثانية لـ (If)

■ **We use the second conditional to talk about a situation that is imaginary or unlikely to happen.**

■ تُستخدم الحالة الثانية لـ (If) للتعبير عن حدث خيالي أو غير محتمل حدوثه.

If + past simple ⟶ could - would ('d) + infinitive

If + ماضي بسيط ⟶ could - would ('d) + المصدر

▶ If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt.

▶ If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places.

Or

could - would ('d) + infinitive ⟶ if + past simple

could - would ('d) + المصدر ⟶ if + ماضي بسيط

▶ I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine.

▶ I would go to the future if I went on a time machine.

Note that: لاحظ أن:

When the if clause is second, we don't use a comma.

لاحظ أننا لا نستخدم (,) عندما تكون (if) في منتصف الجملتين.



Exercises on Lesson 2

1 **Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:**



'd invent – 'd put on – flew – fly – invent – invented - wanted - would - would take

Yehya : Hi, Asser. Are you enjoying our school **project** about inventions?

Asser : Yes, I am. It's really interesting.

Yehya : So Asser, if you ❶ .... a **new form** of transportation, what ❷ .... it be?

Asser : I ❸ .... a flying jacket. If you ❹ .... to meet your friends in the park, you ❺ .... **your jacket** and fly there.

Yehya : Cool! But isn't that dangerous?

Asser : No, don't worry. A computer would **control** the jacket. If you ❻ .... too high, the computer ❼ .... you down. Everyone could have one!

Yahya : It sounds fun!

2 **Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:**

machine - inventions - time - history - competition

Reem : Well, if I entered a science ❶ ...., I'd design a time machine. I'd love to travel to a different **time in** ❷ ....

Nagwa : That's a great idea. If you designed **a time** ❸ ...., where would you go?

Lara : Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.

Reem : If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt! I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.

Nagwa : I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine. I'd go to the future to see what ❹ .... people have!

Lara : Let's make our competition entry about a ❺ .... machine, then! If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places. I think that idea would win the competition!

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. If I (enter - entered) a science competition, I (would design - designed) a robot to clean my room. SB
2. Asser (wouldn't - didn't) use a magazine if he (want - wanted) to find ideas for a competition. SB
3. (Would you - Did you) go to Ancient Egypt if you (had - have) a time machine? SB
4. If we (wouldn't - didn't) enter the competition, we (wouldn't - don't) win a prize! SB
5. If I (stop - stopped) eating junk food, I (lost - would lose) some weight.
6. If I (enter - entered - entering) a science competition, I'd design a time machine.
7. If you traveled in time, who would you (taking - take - takes) with you?
8. Where (will - could - can) you go if you had a car that could go anywhere?
9. I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I (going - go - went) in a time machine.
10. If we (makes - made - make) a time machine, we could go to so many different places.

11. I (will - can - would) go to the future if I went on a time machine.

12. If you (designed - designing - design) a time machine, where could you go?

13. What questions would you ask them if you (met - meet - meeting) a person from the past?

14. If you wanted to win a science competition, what could you (invented - inventing - invent)?

15. If I (have - has - had) a flying car, I could travel all around the world!

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. think - would win - that idea - I - competition - the!

▶ .... !

2. is - time - a - What - machine?

▶ .... ?

3. You - in groups - to - your ideas - can work - talk about.

▶ ....

4. we - for - look - Can - ideas - online?

▶ .... ?

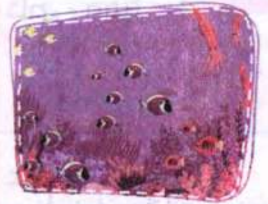
5. to - a different time - in history - travel to - I'd love.

▶ ....

Lessons 3-4 It looks like a fish! & The science museum



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



sea life الحياة البحرية



angelfish السَمكة الملائكية (سمكة مياه عذبة)



sea turtle سلحفاة بحرية



coral reef الشعاب المرجانية



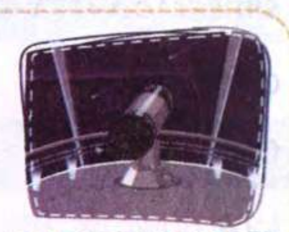
driverless ذاتية القيادة (بدون سائق)



interactive تفاعلي



control يتحكم



planetarium قبة سماوية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

pop	تَفَرْقِع	**experiments**	تجارب
click	تُطَقْطِق	**interviewer**	مُحاور- مذيع
noises	ضوضاء	**material**	مادة

science museum	متحف العلوم	**school trip**	رحلة مدرسية
scientist	عالِم	**anywhere**	أي مكان
exhibition	معرض	**guide**	مُرشد
robots	روبوتات - أجهزة آلية	**watch (n)**	ساعة يد
amazement	دهشة - انبهار	**space**	الفضاء

Adjectives

smooth	ناعم - أملس	curious	فضولي
waterproof	مقاوم للمياه	excited	متحمس
healthy	صحي	special	خاص - مميز

Prepositions

sounds like	تبدو كأنها	up in the sky	عاليًا في السماء
under the water	تحت الماء	got on the bus	ركبوا الحافلة
covered in	مغطى بـ	on the way	في الطريق
similar to	مشابه لـ	in the future	في المستقبل
different from	مختلف عن	will be able to	سيكون قادرًا على
filled with stars	ممتلئة بالنجوم	talk about	يتكلم عن
look down	ينظر لأسفل	into the air	في الهواء

Sentences & Expressions

do a school project	يقوم بمشروع مدرسي	at the museum	في المتحف
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	fly high	يطير عاليًا
everyday life	الحياة اليومية	Excuse me	معذرةً
Let's go	لنذهب	I'd prefer to...	أفضّل أن ...

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

driverless	: something without a driver
interactive	: something you can touch and move
planetarium	: a place where you can see stars and planets
control	: to direct something or somebody

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
sound	تبدو	sounded	sounded
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
fill	يملأ	filled	filled
allow	يسمح	allowed	allowed
chat	يدردش	chatted	chatted
prefer	يُفضِل	preferred	preferred
control	يتحكم	controlled	controlled
notice	يلاحِظ	noticed	noticed
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled
scare	يخيف	scared	scared
pop	تُفَرْقِع	popped	popped
click	تُطَقْطِق	clicked	clicked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
smell	يشم	smelt (smelled)	smelt (smelled)
say	يقول	said	said
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
fly	يطير	flew	flown
swim	يسبح	swam	swum



Read and learn

Activity Book Text

Dr Amin's invention

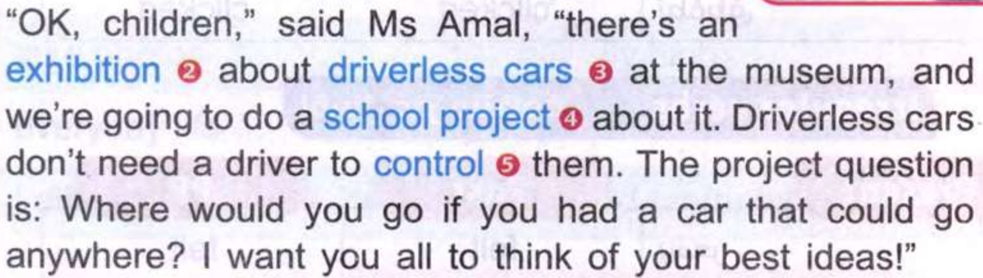
Dr Amin is a scientist who has invented ❶ a special camera. The camera can take photos under the water. It's called Fish Camera because it looks like a real angelfish ❷. It doesn't scare the fish and other sea life. It feels like a fish because it's covered in smooth, waterproof ❸ material. And it sounds like a fish because it makes noises like them. It clicks ❹ and pops ❺! Fish Camera can show scientists how healthy the coral reefs ❻ are.

❶ اخترع - ابتكر
❷ السمكة الملائكية (نوع من الأسماك)
❸ مقاوم للماء - مضاد للماء
❹ تُطقطِق
❺ تُفرقِع
❻ الشعاب المرجانية

A trip to the science museum



Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited. It was the day of the school trip to the science museum ❶, and they couldn't wait. They all got on the bus.



"OK, children," said Ms Amal, "there's an exhibition ❷ about driverless cars ❸ at the museum, and we're going to do a school project ❹ about it. Driverless cars don't need a driver to control ❺ them. The project question is: Where would you go if you had a car that could go anywhere? I want you all to think of your best ideas!"

❶ متحف العلوم
❷ معرض
❸ سيارات ذاتية القيادة
❹ مشروع مدرسي
❺ يتحكم

The children chatted on the way. "That's easy," said Wael, "I'd fly high up in the sky, and look down at everything!"

Fares said, "I'd prefer to go underwater, to see the animals that live in the sea."

Mazen was quiet. He thought if he could go anywhere, he wouldn't go up in the sky, or underwater. Where would he go?

The science museum was amazing. Mazen, Fares, and Wael were in a group with six other students, and a guide ❻ called Mr Kamal. He showed them around and answered lots of questions. Mazen listened as he thought about the project.

First, the children went to an interactive ❼ exhibition about robots. There were lots of experiments to try there. Then they got to the exhibition about driverless cars.

❻ مرشد
❼ تفاعلي
❽ الحياة اليومية
❾ لاحَظ
❿ فضولي
⓫ قبة فلكية (سماوية)
⓬ مليئة بِـ - ممتلئة بِـ
⓭ في ذهول - في دهشة

"I know there are some driverless cars now," said Mr Kamal, "but this one is special. We can't use it in everyday life ❽ yet, but in the future, this car will be able to fly and swim," he said.

"So, I could go into the air!" said Wael.

"And I could go under the water," said Fares.

"It sounds amazing," said Mazen. But he still didn't know where he would go.

The other students looked at the car and talked about what it could do. Mazen noticed ❾ a large door in the exhibition room. He was curious ❿. Mazen spoke to Mr Kamal. "Excuse me, what's through that door?" he asked.

Mr Kamal smiled. "That's the planetarium ⓫. Have you ever been inside a planetarium?"

"No," said Mazen.

Mr Kamal looked at his watch. "We have time. Let's all go and see!" he said.

He opened the door, and Mazen and the other students followed him inside. They saw a dark room, filled with ⓬ stars. Everybody looked in amazement ⓭ as they saw stars and planets high above them.

"This is awesome!" said Mazen. "Now I know where I'd go. I'd go into space if I had a driverless flying car!"



Activity Book Text

The next school trip



Ms Amal spoke to the class.

"Hello, children. I hope you enjoyed the school trip to the science museum ❶ yesterday. I'd like you to talk about your ideas in different groups. Then I want you to choose one idea that is your **favorite.**"

Mona, Dalia, and Fareeda were in a group toget**her.**

"Mona, where would you go if you had a car that **could go** anywhere?" asked Fareeda.

"I'd go to the top of ❷ Mount Sinai ❸. I use a whee**lchair, so** I can't hike up ❹ a mountain. If I flew to the top of **the mountain**, it would be amazing."

"That's a great idea, Mona," said Dalia. "If I went **anywhere**, I'd fly over ❺ the Nile. I'd see crocodiles and other wildlife."

"That sounds a lot of fun," said Mona. "What abo**ut you, F**areeda?"

"I'd go under the water in the Red Sea. If I went **under the** water, I'd see lots of different sea life. I'd see turtles swimming **under the** water and lots of colorful ❻ fish."

"Wow! We'd like that too," said Mona and Dalia. **"Let's do** that!"

The three friends decided that was the best choi**ce in their** group.

❶ متحف العلوم
❷ قمة
❸ جبل سيناء
❹ أتسلّق
❺ أطير فوق
❻ مُلوَّن

Note that: لاحظ أن:

- **We use (looks / feels / sounds / smells / tastes + like) when we want to say that something is similar to something else.**

نستخدم (looks / feels / sounds / smells / tastes + like) للتعبير عن التشابه بين شيئين.

▶ It's called Fish Camera because it looks like a real angelfish.

▶ It sounds like a fish because it makes noises like them.

- **(look, feel, sound, smell, and taste) are verbs that we usually use to describe things we experience with our senses.**

(look, feel, sound, smell, and taste) هي أفعال عادة ما تُستخدم لوصف الأشياء التي نتفاعل معها بحواسنا.

Exercises on Lessons 3 4



1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



coral reefs - feels - looks - sea life - sounds - waterproof

Dr Amin is a scientist who has invented a special camera. The camera can take photos under the water. It's called Fish Camera because it ❶ .... like a real angelfish. It doesn't scare the fish and other ❷ .... It ❸ .... like a fish because it's covered in smooth, ❹ .... material. And it ❺ .... like a fish because it makes noises like them. It clicks and pops! Fish Camera can show scientists how healthy the ❻ .... are.

Term 2

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

interactive – planetarium – cars – exhibition – driverless

There's an ❶ .... about driverless cars at the museum, and we're going to do a school project about it. Driverless cars don't need a driver to control them. The children went to an ❷ .... exhibition about robots. There were lots of experiments to try there. Then they got to the exhibition about ❸ .... cars. After that the children went inside a ❹ .... where they saw stars and planets high above them.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

control – underwater – flying – space – driverless

Ms Amal : OK, children, this is the driverless cars exhibition that we're going to do a school project about.

Mazen : What are ❶ .... cars?

Ms Amal : Driverless cars don't need a driver to ❷ .... them. Where would you go if you had a car that could go anywhere?

Wael : That's easy! I'd fly high up in the sky, and look down at everything!

Fares : I'd prefer to go ❸ .... to see the animals that live in the sea.

Mazen : It sounds amazing! I'd go into ❹ .... if I had a driverless flying car!

Ms Amal : OK, children! This is Mr Kamal. He is our guide here.

Mr Kamal : Hello, children. I'll show you around and answer lots of your questions.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. go - to - exhibition - an - The children - interactive.
   ▶ ....
2. camera - Where - photos - does - the - take?
   ▶ .... ?
3. and - see - a driverless - Mazen - car - his friends.
   ▶ ....
4. can - The camera - take - the water - photos - under.
   ▶ ....
5. is - invention - Dr Amin's - What?
   ▶ .... ?

5 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Yasser:

Tell him about the visit your class made to the science museum. Tell him what you saw and what you liked best there. Your email address is hani@gmail.com and your friend's email address is yasser@school.net.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 5 Language

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



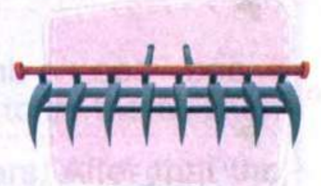

existed موجودة



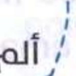
toothpaste معجون أسنان



paste معجون



plow مِحراث

pain ألم



mint نعناع

ink حِبر



engines محركات

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين	**modern world**	العالم الحديث
sign	علامة - دلالة	**events**	أحداث
human body	جسم الإنسان	**type**	نوع
diseases	أمراض	**farming**	الزراعة
decisions	قرارات	**thick**	سميك
machines	آلات	**tell stories**	يحكي (يروي) قصص
calendars	تقاويم	**almost**	تقريبًا

medicine	دواء	**papyrus**	ورق البردي
herbs	أعشاب	**reeds**	قصب - بوص
salt	ملح	**wood**	خشب
pepper	فلفل (أسود)	**soil**	تربة
oil	زيت	**metal**	معدني

Prepositions

come from	تأتي من	made from	مصنوع من
write down	يُدوِّن - يكتب	in the past	في الماضي
thousands of **years**	آلاف السنين	interested in	مهتم بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
mix	يخلط	mixed	mixed
record	يُسجل	recorded	recorded
turn	يُقلِّب - يَقلب	turned	turned
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
change	يُغير	changed	changed
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
create	يبتكر	created	created
move	يحرك	moved	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
dig	يحفر	dug	dug
keep	يُحافظ	kept	kept
burn	يحرق	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)
understand	يفهم	understood	understood



Read and learn



What did the Ancient Egyptians invent? by Injy
ماذا اخترع قدماء المصريين؟

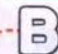
We think our modern world ❶ is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed ❷ for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention! For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs ❸ to stop pain ❹ and diseases.

❶ عالمنا الحديث ❷ كانت موجودة ❸ أعشاب ❹ ألم - وَجَع



Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of toothpaste ❺. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, mint ❻, and pepper into a paste ❼. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as good as modern toothpaste!

❺ معجون الأسنان ❻ نعناع ❼ معجون



In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down ❽ decisions, record ❾ events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ink ❿. Papyrus ⓫ was a type of thick ⓬ paper made from reeds ⓭. It wasn't as smooth ⓮ as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

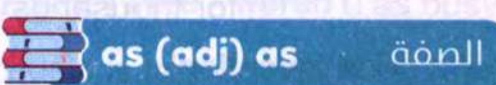
❽ يُدوِّن - يكتب ❾ يُسجِّل ❿ حبر ⓫ ورق البردي ⓬ سميك ⓭ البوص ⓮ ناعم



The Ancient Egyptians were one of the first groups of people to use a metal plow ⓯. A plow was used to dig and turn the soil. Later, they used animals to pull ⓰ this plow. This made plowing ⓱ the land easier, but it wasn't as easy as it is today. Now, farmers use machines with engines ⓲ to move their plows.

⓯ محراث ⓰ يجرّ - يسحب ⓱ حرث - حراثة ⓲ محركات

Grammar Study



- **The affirmative form of (as ..... as) means that the two things we are comparing are the same in some way.**

- تُعَبِّر (as ..... as) في حالة الإثبات عن التساوي في الصفة، وتوضع الصفة كما هي بدون إضافات.

Example:

▶ Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as good as modern toothpaste!

It means: (Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was good, and modern toothpaste is good, too.)

Term 2

- **The negative form of (as ..... as) means that the two things we are comparing are different.**

- **تُعَبِّر (as ..... as) في حالة النفي على أن الطرف الثاني في المقارنة يزيد عن الطرف الأول في الصفة المستخدمة.**

Examples:

- It wasn't as easy as it is today. (It was hard then, but it is easier now.)
- Sara isn't as tall as Hala. = Hala is taller than Sara.
- I'm not as old as my father. = My father is older than me.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

existed - Egyptians - sign - medicine - inventions

We think our modern world is full of exciting new ❶ .... However, the Ancient ❷ .... were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've ❸ .... for thousands of years. That's the ❹ .... of a good invention!

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

engines - pull - soil - farmers - plow

The Ancient Egyptians were one of the first groups of people to use a metal ❶ .... A plow was used to dig and turn the ❷ .... Later, they used animals to ❸ .... this plow. This made plowing the land easier, but it wasn't as easy as it is today. Now, farmers use machines with ❹ .... to move their plows.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

communicated - ink - record - smooth - papyrus

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, ❶ .... events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ❷ .... Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people ❸ .... The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the ❹ ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Spring (is - isn't) as hot as the summer. A B
2. Villages (are - aren't) as busy as cities. A B
3. Fares is funny. Nadia is funny, too. Fares (is - isn't) as funny as Nadia. A B
4. Paper (is - isn't) as expensive as computers. A B
5. The roads in Ancient Egypt (were - weren't) as busy as they are today. A B
6. Sherif is ten and his cousin is ten. Sherif (is - isn't) as old as his cousin.
7. There (were - weren't) as many people in Ancient Egypt as there are today.
8. Mrs Amal's apartment (is - isn't) as modern as ours. Both apartments are in the same building. A B
9. Mariam's idea was as good (like - as - to) ours, so we both won the prize!
10. Farming in the past wasn't (as easy - easy - as easy as) it is now.
11. Papyrus (isn't - were - weren't) as smooth as paper.
12. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as (good - good as - as good) modern toothpaste!

13. Ancient Egyptians were (than - as - to) interested in health and medicine as we are today.

14. It wasn't as (easy - easier - easiest) as it is today.

15. I think ink is as (useful - useful as - more useful) paper.

16. Toothpaste is as (older - oldest - old) as herbs.

17. Ancient Egyptian inventors were (as clever as - as clever - clever) inventors today.

18. Farming was as (more important - important - the most important) as it is today.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. did - Ancient - the - What - invent - Egyptians?

▶ ....?

2. understood - They - how - worked - the human - body.

▶ ....

3. Egyptians - wanted - clean - to - Ancient - keep.

▶ ....

4. was - difficult - Farming - in - past - the.

▶ ....

5. Egyptian - were - Ancient - clever - inventors.

▶ ....

Lesson 6 Writing: A solution to a problem

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





solution حل



problem مشكلة



seabin جهاز لتنقية المياه



The Ocean Net شبكة لالتقاط القمامة من الماء



trapped عالق - محتجَز



effect تأثير



chip bags أكياس رقائق البطاطس (شيبسي)



recycled معاد تدويرها

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

sea life	الحياة البحرية	**get into the ocean**	يصل إلى المحيط
sea animals	حيوانات بحرية	**bad for the environment**	سيئ بالنسبة للبيئة - ضار بالبيئة
sea birds	طيور بحرية	**beaches**	شواطئ
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	**trash**	قمامة
turtles	سلاحف بحرية	**pollution**	تلوُّث

reasons	أسباب	**bucket**	دلو
objects	أشياء	**pump**	مضخة
straws	شفاطات	**fuel**	وقود
cardboard	ورق مقوى - كرتون	**horrible**	قبيحة - بشعة
sick	مريض	**made up of**	تتكون من

Activity Book

electricity	كهرباء	high levels	مستويات عالية
fossil fuels	وقود حفري	climate change	تَغيُّر مناخي
coal	فحم	train platform	رصيف القطار
oil	بترول	interactive	تفاعلي
gas	غاز	floor tiles	بلاط أرضيات
greenhouse gases	غازات الدفيئة (المُسَبِّبة للاحتباس الحراري)	turn into	يتحول إلى
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	scared of	خائف من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
filter	ينقي - يصفي	filtered	filtered
look	يبدو - ينظر	looked	looked
sort	يُصَنِّف	sorted	sorted
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled
include	يشمل - يُضَمِّن	included	included
create	يُنشئ	created	created
cause	يسبب	caused	caused
store	يخزن	stored	stored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt
catch	يلتقط	caught	caught



Tip!

How to write a solution to a problem

- When you write a solution to a problem, you need to include reasons. Your reasons show the reader why your solution is a good one.

عندما تكتب حلاً لمشكلة ما، عليك أن تذكر الأسباب. تُوَضِّح أسبابك للقارئ سبب كَوْن الحل الذي تقدمه جيدًا.

- Introduce your reasons with Firstly, Secondly, etc.

قدِّم أسبابك باستخدام Firstly, Secondly وما إلى ذلك.

- Other phrases you can use are: it helps, it stops, it's good for...

هناك عبارات أخرى يمكنك استخدامها مثل: it helps, it stops, it's good for...

Read and learn

NEWS Log in Upload Download

We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ocean and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad effect ❶ on sea life ❷: turtles ❸, fish, and jellyfish ❹, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get trapped ❺ in the plastic and are hurt. Plastic in our water is also bad for the environment. A lot of plastic pollution ❻ is washed onto ❼ beaches, which looks horrible. If there wasn't so much plastic pollution, the seas and beaches would be safer for the sea animals ❽ and for us, too.

❶ تأثير
❷ الحياة (الأحياء) البحرية
❸ السلاحف المائية (البحرية)
❹ قناديل البحر
❺ تُغلَق
❻ التلوُّث
❼ تجرفها المياه إلى
❽ الحيوانات البحرية



The Ocean Net ⑨ is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great solution to the problem of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of reasons. Firstly ⑩, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea so that animals, fish, and sea birds ⑪ are not hurt.

Secondly ⑫, it's also good for the environment. It catches plastic objects: drink bottles ⑬, chip ⑭ bags, and plastic straws ⑮. These plastic objects can then be sorted ⑯ and recycled ⑰. This means that we use less plastic.

As you can see, the Ocean Net is a great invention!

⑨ شبكة
⑩ أولًا
⑪ الطيور البحرية
⑫ ثانيًا
⑬ زجاجات المشروبات
⑭ رقائق البطاطس
⑮ الشفاطات البلاستيكية
⑯ تُفرَز
⑰ يُعاد تدويرها

Activity Book Text



Problem

Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels ❶ like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases ❷, like methane ❸. However, greenhouse gases are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause climate change ❹ and air pollution.

Solution

A company has created special floor tiles ❺ which create energy when people walk on them. The energy is turned into electricity and stored ❻. Now the tiles are used in 36 countries around the world to create energy in different places: on train platforms, and in places where people play football. As a result, the energy is clean, it's interactive ❼, and it's fun to create!

❶ وقود حفري
❷ غازات الدفيئة
❸ غاز الميثان
❹ تغير المناخ
❺ بلاط أرضيات
❻ خُزّنت
❼ تفاعلي

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



trapped - catches - recycled - beaches - eat

Plastic in our oceans is bad because animals sometimes ❶ .... the plastic or get ❷ .... in it. It also causes pollution on ❸ .... The Ocean Net is good because it stops plastic from getting into the sea. The plastic in the net can be sorted and ❹ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

environment - problems - trapped - ocean - effect

We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ❶ .... and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad ❷ .... on sea life: turtles, fish, and jellyfish, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get ❸ .... in the plastic and are hurt. Plastic in our water is also bad for the ❹ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

reasons - problem - sorted - chip - solution

The Ocean Net is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great ❶ .... to the ❷ .... of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of ❸ .... Firstly, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea so that animals, fish, and sea birds are not hurt. Secondly, it's also good for the environment. It catches plastic objects: drink bottles, ❹ .... bags, and plastic straws. These plastic objects can then be sorted and recycled. This means that we use less plastic.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

climate – gases – fuels – creates – dioxide

Many countries still make electricity using fossil ❶ .... like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels ❷ .... carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like methane. However, greenhouse ❸ .... are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause ❹ .... change and air pollution.

5 Punctuate these sentences with a colon (:), commas (,), and a period (.):



1. We saw lots of things at the art exhibition paintings sculptures murals and mozaics
   ▶ ....
2. The river was full of plastic pollution chip packages water bottles and food containers
   ▶ ....
3. There are many forms of renewable energy wind solar wave and water
   ▶ ....
4. We can do things to stop plastic pollution reduce reuse and recyle
   ▶ ....

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. use - in our - plastic - We - lives - everyday.
   ▶ ....
2. can - have - on sea life - a very - Plastic - bad effect.
   ▶ ....
3. Net - is - invention - a special - The Ocean.
   ▶ ....
4. solution - The Seabin - interesting - is - an.
   ▶ ....



7 Read the problem and solution below. Write about the problem and solution:



- Explain what is bad about the problem. Is it dangerous or bad for nature?
- Explain what is good about the solution. Is it natural, easy, or clean?
- Include colons for lists.
- Link your ideas with: Now, As a result, and However.

Problem

In Kenya, some elephants go into farms and eat the farmers' crops. Some farmers want to hurt the elephants.

Solution

Elephants are big and powerful animals, but they are scared of bees. Keep bees in the fields.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 7 Story: Feeding the birds

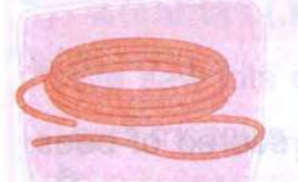


Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس






birdfeeders صناديق إطعام الطيور	**birdseed** حبوب للطيور	**clothes pins** مشابك الملابس	**gatepost** عمود تثبيت البوابة






rope حبل	**knot** عُقدة	**loop** حَلَقة	**tie (v)** يربط

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

yard	فناء - حديقة	**neighbor**	جار
outside	بالخارج	**slowly**	ببطء
garage	جراج - مرأب	**sink (n)**	حوض
gate	بوابة	**branch**	فرع - غصن

Sentences & Expressions

sat on a chair	جلس على كرسي	of course	بالطبع
walk with a stick	يمشي مستندًا على عصا	look out of	ينظر من
the other way	الجانب الآخر	top part	الجانب العلوي
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	decided to	قرر أن

Activity Book

clay plant pots	أواني من الفخار للنباتات	creative	مُبدع - مبتكِر
protection	حماية	empty	فارغ - خالي
flat stones	حجارة مسطحة (مستوية)	we'll be away	سنكون مسافرين

Vocabulary Study SB Activity Book

creative	: using the imagination to produce new ideas
vegetable	: a healthy food that can be grown in the garden
cover	: to place or put something over an object for protection
water	: a verb to describe pouring or sprinkling water

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
water	يروي - يسقي	watered	watered
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
attach	يربط	attached	attached
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
tie	يربط	tied	tied
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
worry	يقلق	worried	worried
cover	يُغطي	covered	covered
plant	يزرع	planted	planted
produce	يُنتج	produced	produced
place	يضع (شيء في مكان)	placed	placed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
feed	يُطعم	fed	fed
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
sit down	يجلس	sat down	sat down
fly	يطير	flew	flown
grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew	grown
dig	يحفر	dug	dug



Read and learn



Story: Feeding the birds



One morning, Rania was in her yard ❶. She could hear her neighbor, Mr Hamdy. Every morning, he went outside and filled ❷ his birdfeeders ❸. Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds.

But that day, something was different. He was outside, but it sounded like ❹ he was walking slowly.

Rania went and asked her mom, "Is Mr Hamdy OK? He isn't feeding ❺ the birds."

"Mr Hamdy hurt his leg," said Mom. "He's OK, but he needs to walk with a stick ❻. I think it's difficult for him to fill his birdfeeders. I'm making some koshari for his lunch. Can you take it to him later?"

"Of course," said Rania. She thought about Mr Hamdy. He loved feeding the birds, and she was sad that he couldn't. Rania looked out of

❶ فِناء - حديقة
❷ ملأ
❸ صناديق إطعام الطيور
❹ بدا وكأنه
❺ يُطعِم
❻ عصا

the window. She decided to help Mr Hamdy. She got some pencils and paper, and sat down at her desk to draw her ideas.

A few hours later, Mom called Rania. "Mr Hamdy's koshari is ready," she said.

Rania picked up her paper. She asked, "Have we got any **rope** 7 and **clothes pins** 8?"

"What for?" asked Mom.

"To make something," Rania replied.

Mom said, "There are clothes pins under the **sink** 9 and rope in the garage. Do you need any help?"

"No, thanks, I know what to do," said Rania. She got the rope, the clothes pins, and the koshari, and went next door.

7 حبل
8 مشابك ملابس
9 حوض
10 طرف من
11 غصن شجرة
12 ربطتهما
13 بوابة معدنية
14 عمود (قائم) تثبيت البوابة
15 رَبطت عقدة
16 حلقة
17 تحركت تجاه (ناحية)
18 حبوب للطيور
19 يجذب - يسحب

"I'm sorry you hurt your leg," she said. "Mom made you some lunch. Did you feed the birds today?" "Thank you," said Mr Hamdy. "I won't be able to walk very well for a while. So, I couldn't feed the birds today. I'm worried that they might go somewhere else for food."

"May I make something in your yard?" asked Rania. "I want to help feed the birds." "Of course, dear," he said.

Outside, Rania threw **one end of** 10 the rope over the **branch of a tree** 11. She took two birdfeeders from the tree, and **attached** 12 them to the rope with clothes pins. Next to Mr Hamdy's chair, there was a **metal gate** 13. Rania put the rope around the **gatepost** 14, and **tied a knot** 15 to make one big **loop** 16. She pulled the rope, first the part above the knot, and then the part below it. The birdfeeders **moved towards** 17 her when she pulled the top part. "It works!" she said.

She called Mr Hamdy. "Please, sit here," she said.

"This looks interesting, Rania," said Mr Hamdy, smiling.

She gave him some **birdseed** 18 and showed him where to **pull on** 19 the rope to make the birdfeeders move.

Mr Hamdy smiled as he sat in the sun and filled the birdfeeders. When they were ready, Rania helped him pull the rope the other way. The birdfeeders went high up, close to the branches of the tree. The birds **flew** ⓴ onto the branches and started to eat.

⓴ طارت

"Thank you, Rania," he said. "Your invention is fantastic! I can rest and still enjoy the birds."

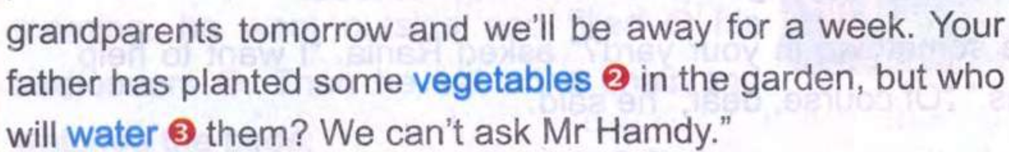
Activity Book Text

What does Rania's mom want help with?

The next day, Rania was in the kitchen with her mom.

"I really enjoyed making the birdfeeder for Mr Hamdy, Mom," said Rania.

"You have lots of good ideas, Rania. You're very **creative** ❶. Can you help me solve a problem? We're going to stay with your grandparents tomorrow and we'll be away for a week. Your father has planted some **vegetables** ❷ in the garden, but who will **water** ❸ them? We can't ask Mr Hamdy."



❶ مبدع
❷ خضراوات
❸ يروي
❹ غطاها

Rania thought for a few moments and then she said, "I've got an idea!"

Rania found four clay plant pots in the garden. Each pot had a hole in the bottom. Then she found four small stones and four bigger flat stones. She went inside and got some glue, and brought her mom into the garden.

"Look, Mom," she said. Rania put some glue on each small stone and put them inside the plant pots to cover the holes. Then she put the plant pots deep into the soil between the vegetables in the garden. She filled the pots with water and **covered** ❹ them with the flat stones and soil.

"What are you doing Rania? How will that help?" asked her mom.

"The plant pots are made of clay, so the water will slowly go through the pots into the soil. When we come back next week, the pots will be empty and the vegetables will be green and healthy," explained Rania.

"Rania, what a clever idea! Your father will be so pleased! Thank you," said her mom.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

idea – creative – planted – pots – solve

Rania : I really enjoyed making the birdfeeder for Mr Hamdy, Mom.
Mom : You have lots of good ideas, Rania. You're very ❶ ....
Rania : Thank you, Mom.
Mom : Can you help me ❷ .... a problem?
Rania : Sure. What is it?
Mom : Your father has planted some vegetables in clay ❸ .... in the garden, but nobody waters them.
Rania : I've got an ❹ .... ! Don't worry, mom.
Mom : Your father will be so pleased! Thank you, Rania.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Every morning, Rania's neighbor, Mr Hamdy, filled his birdfeeders. Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds. One day, Mr Hamdy didn't feed the birds. "Mr Hamdy hurt his leg. It's difficult for him to fill his birdfeeders," said Rania's mom. Rania wanted to help Mr Hamdy feed the birds. Later, Rania took Mr Hamdy some koshari from her mom. She took a rope and some clothes pins. Outside, Rania threw the rope over the branch of a tree. She tied two birdfeeders to the rope with clothes pins. Rania put the rope around the gatepost, and tied

a knot to make one big loop. She pulled the rope, first the part above the knot, and then the part below it. The birdfeeders moved towards her. "It works!" she said. Rania showed Mr Hamdy how to pull on the rope to make the birdfeeders move. Soon, the birds flew onto the branches and started to eat.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Every morning, Rania's neighbor, Mr Hamdy, filled his (birdseeds - gatepost - birdfeeders).
2. Rania wanted to help Mr Hamdy (feed - cook - eat) the birds.
3. The opposite of the underlined word "pulled" is (caught - pushed - threw).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why is it difficult for Mr Hamdy to fill his birdfeeders?
   ▶ ....
5. What food did Rania take to Mr Hamdy?
   ▶ ....

3 Put the words to make correct sentences:

1. does - Rania - to eat - take - What - to Mr Hamdy?
   ▶ .... ?
2. the - birds - Mr Hamdy - feeding - loved.
   ▶ ....
3. you - any - need - help - Do?
   ▶ .... ?
4. around - Rania - put - gatepost - the rope - the.
   ▶ ....
5. does - mom - Rania's - Why - koshari - make?
   ▶ .... ?

Unit 7 Test 4



Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Drinking dirty water can cause (protection - prevention - disease - cure).
2. Dirty water has a lot of (vitamins - viruses - fats - bacteria) in it.
3. We can store fresh food in a (cooker - refrigerator - microwave - oven).
4. To (prevent - damage - destroy - harm) yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

invent - dangerous - flying - jacket - inventions

Yehya : Hi, Asser. Are you enjoying our school project about ❶ ....?

Asser : Yes, it's really interesting.

Yehya : So, if you invented a new form of transportation, what would it be?

Asser : I would invent a ❷ .... jacket.

Yehya : Cool! But isn't that ❸ ....?

Asser : No, don't worry. A computer would control the ❹ ....

Yehya : It sounds fun!

Asser : Of course it is.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Thomas Edison was a great scientist and an inventor. He invented many things. One of his inventions is the light bulb. As a child, Edison didn't enjoy going to school. When he was only seven, the headmaster asked him to leave school because he didn't do his school work. So he stayed at home. His mother taught him the most important things and encouraged him to read a lot about science. Edison couldn't buy the books he needed because he was poor. So, at twelve he began to sell newspapers and

Term 2

sweets in trains to get money. Thank God for inventors like Edison or we would still be using oil lamps and candles to read in the dark.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Edison invented the (candle - oil lamp - engine - light bulb).
2. When Edison was only seven, the headmaster asked him to (leave - come - get to - learn) school
3. The opposite of the underlined word "poor" is (famous - rich - popular - creative).

B Answer these questions:

4. What did Edison do to get money?
   ▶ ....
5. How was his mother helpful to him?
   ▶ ....

The Reader News Team (4Ms)

4 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (2Ms)

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good cousins. ( )
2. Hatem was the editor of the newspaper. ( )
3. Hatem read everybody's writing, and checked with the teacher. ( )
4. Tarek was the arts journalist. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. When did the children have the idea to produce a newspaper together?
   ▶ ....
6. What was Hatem's job?
   ▶ ....



5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. If you (going - go - went - goes) to bed early, you would be more active.
2. Spring isn't as (as hot – hot as - as hotter - hottest as) summer.
3. If you went to Ancient Egypt, you could (knows - knowing - knew - know) how they built ships.
4. The Ancient Egyptians were (as good - good as - as better - best as) as modern people at inventing new things.
5. If I visited Sharm El-Sheikh on vocation, I (can - will - would - was) swim in the sea.
6. Papyrus wasn't (as smooth - smooth - as smooth as - less smooth) the paper we use today.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. of fish - the - does - What type - look like - camera?

▶ .... ?

2. environment - Cycling - is - the - good - for.

▶ ....

3. What - planetarium - the - inside - is?

▶ .... ?

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A visit to the science museum"

▶ **Ideas to help you:**

- **When did you go?**
- **With whom?**
- **What did you do and see there?**

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 8

In this unit, I will ....

- read and work out meaning of new words from context.
- understand and use the present continuous for future.
- ask for and give advice.
- listen for details and take notes.
- understand the writer's opinion in a text.
- understand and use commands and requests in reported speech.
- write a personal statement.
- understand the main ideas in summaries.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Personal qualities and emotions:** afraid, anxious, determined, embarrassed, independent, patient **Phrases using take:** take part, take time, take turns, take an interest **Words from the story:** scouts, oasis, ripped/rip (v), blew/blow (v), leader
Language	**Present continuous for future arrangements:** My grandma is sick, so next week I'm doing her shopping. **Reported commands and requests:** My teacher told me to try again. She asked me to help her with her homework.
Reading	A quiz about personal qualities and feelings; emails; a factual article about teamwork; a poem; a story about a scouts adventure
Writing	Writing a personal statement, including subheadings and details
Speaking	Giving advice
Listening	Listening to advice in dialogs
Life skills	**Self-management:** learning to be part of a team
Values	**Tolerance and acceptance of others**
Issues and challenges	**Citizenship**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Social studies:** understanding the value of collaborating with others

Lesson 1 What would you do?



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



anxious قلق - متوتر



determined عازم - مُصِرّ



patient صبور



afraid خائف - مرعوب



embarrassed محرَج - مرتبك



independent مستقل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

quiz	اختبار قصير	**aquarium**	معرض أحياء مائية - حوض سمك
presentation	عرض تقديمي	**movie theater**	دار عرض سينمائي
results	نتائج	**try hard**	يحاول بجِد
instead	بدلاً - عِوضًا	**find solutions**	يجد حلولًا

practice	يتدرب - يتمرن	**text message**	رسالة نصية
calmly	بهدوء	**space**	مساحة
notes	ملاحظات	**mind**	عقل - ذهن
mostly	معظم - أغلب	**person**	شخص
good grades	درجات جيدة	**give advice**	يقدّم نصيحة

Adjectives

quiet	هادئ	wrong	خطأ
busy	مشغول	scary	مخيف
silly	سخيف	kind	طيب - عطوف
frightened	خائف - مذعور	nervous	متوتر
possible	ممكن	similar	متشابهة

Prepositions

anxious about	متوتر من (شيء)	on your own	بمفردك
worried about	قلِق من (شيء)	wait for	ينتظر (شخصًا - شيئًا)
determined to do	عازم على القيام بـ	go out	يخرج - يذهب خارجًا
afraid of	خائف من	for a long time	لفترة طويلة
embarrassed about	محرَج من (شيء)	for a week	لمدة أسبوع

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

independent	: happy to do something on your own
determined	: believing that you will do or finish something
anxious	: worried or nervous about something
patient	: able to wait calmly for a long time
afraid	: scared or frightened of something
embarrassed	: worried about what other people think, or feeling bad about something you did or said

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
prepare	يُحَضِّر - يُجَهِّز	prepared	prepared
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced
hope	يتمنى - يأمل	hoped	hoped
explain	يَشرح	explained	explained
believe	يعتقد - يؤمن	believed	believed
finish	يُنهي	finished	finished
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
disagree	يرفض	disagreed	disagreed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
stick	يلصق	stuck	stuck
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
mean	يقصد - يعني	meant	meant

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

When you play sports, you're learning important teamwork skills. Teamwork skills can help you be successful in many other parts of your life, too.

عندما تمارس الرياضة، فإنك تتعلم مهارات العمل الجماعي المهمة. يمكن أن تساعدك مهارات العمل الجماعي على النجاح في العديد من جوانب حياتك الأخرى كذلك.





Read and learn

What would you do?



1 Imagine your friend was quiet and sad for a week. What would you do?

a) Write a text message or email to say that you are there if they want to talk.

b) Ask questions to find out what's wrong.

c) Give them some space, and wait for them to tell you the problem.

2 Imagine your friend wanted to go to the movie theater ❶ the day before your exam. What would you do?

a) Say no, but look for a movie you can go to next weekend instead.

b) Do lots of study now, so you can go out before the exam.

c) Say that you're too busy.

3 Imagine you were anxious ❷ about giving a presentation in class. How would you prepare?

a) Ask somebody to listen to you practice and give you advice.

b) Watch videos of other people giving presentations to get some advice.

c) Make lots of notes and stick ❸ them around your house to help you learn it.

4 Imagine your friend wanted to visit the aquarium ❹, but you were afraid ❺ of fish. What would you do?

a) Go with them, and hope the fish aren't as scary ❻ as you imagine!

b) Say no, but don't tell them why. You don't want to look silly ❼.

c) Explain that you don't like fish, but you'd like to do something else.

❶ دار عرض أفلام
❷ قلق - متوتر
❸ إلصق
❹ معرض الأحياء المائية
❺ خائف
❻ مخيف
❼ أحمق - سخيف

Your results!

Mostly a: You always try hard, and you're a good friend. You like to be with other people, and you want to make them happy.

Mostly b: You are a determined ❽ person. You work hard to find solutions to problems, and you can feel embarrassed ❾ easily.

Mostly c: You're patient ❿ and independent ⓫ – you know your own mind. You're a good friend, and you're kind to yourself as well.

❽ قوي الإرادة - عازم
❾ تشعر بالإحراج
❿ صبور - حليم
⓫ مستقل

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

understood – anxious – explained – patient – homework

Reem's dad was helping her with her math ❶ .... It was difficult and Reem couldn't get the right answers. Her dad ❷ .... it very slowly. He helped Reem for half an hour until Reem ❸ .... Reem's dad was ❹ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

independent – presentations – anxious – advice – practice

I was ❶ .... about giving a presentation in class. So, I watched videos of other people giving ❷ .... to get some ideas. I also asked my mom to listen to me ❸ .... and give me ❹ ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. do - you - be patient - try - and - When?

▶ .... ?

2. Youssef - learning - is - a bike - ride - how to.

▶ ....

3. an - you - Are - person - independent?

▶ .... ?

4. is - some cakes - making - a charity - Injy - for.

▶ ....

5. do - you - When - anxious - sometimes - feel?

▶ .... ?

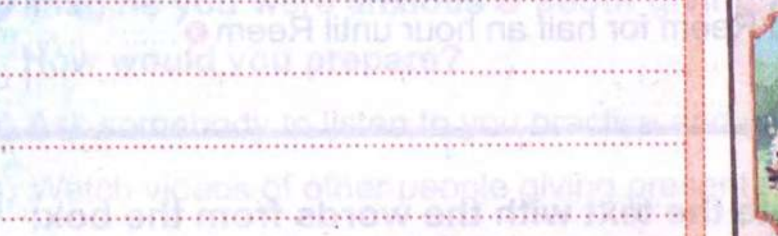
6. and I - were - the street - down - Mom - walking.

▶ ....

4 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

"A short story"

▶ Ideas to help you: **poor boy - studied hard - independent - patient - businessman - successful - rich**





....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2 Language

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس









store (n)	متجر
shopping	التسوق
restaurant	مطعم
meal	وجبة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

better	بحال أفضل - أفضل	**take photos**	يلتقط صورًا
parents	الوالدان	**far**	بعيد
busy	مشغول	**boat**	قارب - مركب
surprise	مفاجأة	**weekend**	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
fun (adj)	ممتع	**auntie**	خالة - عمة

Prepositions

at five o'clock	في تمام الساعة الخامسة	on vacation	في عُطلة - في إجازة
at home	في المنزل	Thank you for	أشكرك على
by the sea	بجوار البحر	help with	يُساعد في

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
email	يُرسل بريدًا إلكترونيًا	emailed	emailed
stay	يمكث - يُقيم	stayed	stayed

Present		Past	PP
paint	يطلي - يلوّن	painted	painted
pack	يحزم	packed	packed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
make	يصنع	made	made
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
leave	يغادِر	left	left
show	يعرِض	showed	shown

Read and learn



Hello Youssef,

How are you? The last time you emailed, you said your grandma was sick. I hope she's better now.

My parents are very busy this week, so I'm making dinner this evening. My sisters are going to the **store** ❶ this afternoon to buy the food we need. Then, at five o'clock, I'm cooking my parents' favorite **meal** ❷. It's hawawshi! It will be a **surprise** ❸. I hope they like it! I'm helping my little brother with his homework tomorrow, too. My dad usually does that, but I really like doing more to help at home.

What are you doing next week? And are you going on vacation this summer?

Write soon,

Yaseen

❶ متجر
❷ وجبة
❸ مفاجأة

Hi Yaseen!



Thanks for your email, and I hope the cooking is fun! Thank you for asking about my grandma. She's OK, but I'm doing her shopping ❶ tomorrow because she can't walk far yet.

❶ تسوُّق

❷ عطلة - إجازة

I'm very excited because I'm staying with my cousins next week, just for the weekend. I'm helping them to paint their boat – it's very old. They live by the sea, so it will be awesome! I'll take lots of photos and show them to you.

We aren't going on vacation ❷ this summer. Our cousins are coming here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city. Are you going anywhere this summer?

See you soon,

Youssef

Grammar Study



Present continuous (future arrangements)

المضارع المستمر (الترتيبات المستقبلية)

- **We use the present continuous to talk about things happening now.**
- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أشياء تحدث الآن.

○ I'm studying English now.

- **We can also use it to talk about arrangements in the future.**
- كما يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أشياء مُخطط لها أو ترتيبات في المستقبل.

○ I'm helping my little brother with his homework tomorrow.



- We often use a time phrase to show when this will happen. Time phrases include:

- غالبًا ما نستخدم بعض العبارات الزمنية لبيان وقت حدوث الفعل في المستقبل. العبارات الزمنية مثل:

(later, tomorrow, this evening, at five o'clock, next week, next month)

Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

meal - busy - surprise - parents - store

My parents are very ❶ .... this week, so I'm making dinner this evening. My sisters are going to the ❷ .... this afternoon to buy the food we need. Then, at five o'clock, I'm cooking my parents' favorite ❸ .... It's hawawshi! It will be a ❹ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

vacation - awesome - staying - boat - shopping

I'm doing my grandma's ❶ .... tomorrow because she can't walk far. I'm very excited because I'm ❷ .... with my cousins next week, just for the weekend. I'm helping them to paint their ❸ .... – it's very old. They live by the sea, so it will be awesome! I'll take lots of photos. We aren't going on ❹ .... this summer. Our cousins are coming here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city.

3 Complete the text with the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets:



Jumana ❶ .... (stay) with her grandparents next week. She ❷ .... (leave) next Thursday and she's very excited. Her grandparents live in the city and they have planned a lot of things to do. They ❸ .... (go) to a restaurant for dinner on the first night. They ❹ .... (visit) the museum the next day. Her grandparents live next to a big park, so on Sunday they ❺ .... (have) a picnic with her aunts, uncles, and cousins. Jumana ❻ .... (pack) her bags this evening. She doesn't want to forget anything!

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Was - Is - Are) Reem looking after her little brother tomorrow?
2. We (were - is - are) helping our parents next weekend.
3. Hana (is - isn't - wasn't) going on vacation next week. She's staying at home.
4. Yaseen's sisters (am - is - are) going to the store.
5. (Am - Is - Are) you staying with your grandma?
6. I'm (making - makes - make) cookies for my friend later.
7. Our cousins are (coming - came - comes) here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city.
8. Youssef is (visit - visiting - visited) his cousins.
9. Are you (goes - going - go) anywhere this summer?
10. What are you doing (last - past - next) week?
11. Who is Jumana (stay - stayed - staying) with next week?
12. Where are you going (last week - yesterday - tomorrow)?
13. When is Youssef (help - helping - helps) to paint a boat?

14. I (was cooking - am cooking - cooks) my parents' favorite meal tomorrow.

15. They (stay - were staying - are staying) with their grandparents next week.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. is - Yaseen - When - meal - cooking - the?
   ▶ ....?
2. on vacation - aren't - going - We - summer - this.
   ▶ ....
3. the weekend - What - doing - are - you - on?
   ▶ ....?
4. visiting - Is - now - Youssef - his - cousins?
   ▶ ....?

6 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Ehab:

Tell him what you are doing next week, and if you are going anywhere this summer. Your email address is hani@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is ehab@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 3-4 It should be fun! & Stronger together



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



musical performance عرض (أداء) موسيقي



in a row متتالي - على التوالي



worn out مُنهَك - مُجهَد



disappoint يُحبِط - يُخَيِّب الأمل



take part يشترك



take time يستغرق بعض الوقت



take turns يتبادل - (يتناوب) الأدوار



take an interest in يهتم بـ

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

more sleep	قسط أكبر من النوم	**good advice**	نصيحة جيدة
special food	طعام خاص	**energy**	طاقة
information	معلومات	**art competition**	مسابقة فنية
common goal	هدف مشترَك	**confused**	حائر - مشوَّش
try hard	يحاول بِجد	**unsure**	غير واثق - متردد
part of a team	جزء من فريق	**give a presentation**	يقدم عرض تقديمي

title	عنوان	**experience**	تجربة - خبرة
together	معًا	**ideas**	أفكار
activities	أنشطة	**successful**	ناجح
opinion	رأي	**positions**	أماكن - مواقع
make new friends	يُكوّن صداقات جديدة	**in the first half**	في النصف (الشوط) الأول
teamwork	عمل جماعي	**inspire**	يُلهم
leader	قائد	**follower**	تابِع - مُتابع

Prepositions

focus on	يُركز على	under the direction of	تحت إدارة (إشراف) ...
friends for life	أصدقاء مدى الحياة	find out	يكتشف - يَعرف
full of	مليء بـ - ممتلئ بـ	good at	جيد في

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

disappoint (somebody)	: to behave in a way that makes somebody feel a bit sad
in a row	: one after the other, in order
worn out	: very tired
take part	: join in
take time	: do something carefully
take turns	: people do something, one person at a time
take an interest	: be curious about

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
perform	يؤدي	performed	performed
join	يلتحق بـ	joined	joined
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced
behave	يتصرف	behaved	behaved
inspire	يُلهِم	inspired	inspired
guide	يُرشِد	guided	guided
achieve	ينجز - يحقق	achieved	achieved
plan	يخطط	planned	planned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
spend time	يقضي وقتًا	spent time	spent time
make sure	يتأكد	made sure	made sure
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
meet	يُقابل	met	met
feel	يَشعر	felt	felt
lose	يخسر	lost	lost



Read and learn



Stronger together



Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz ❶. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus ❷ on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to take part ❸. You might learn a lot!

❶ اختبار قصير
❷ يركز
❸ يشارك - يشترك
❹ تجربة
❺ شعرْتَ بالارتباك
❻ عدم الثقة
❼ يتناوبون (يتبادلون) الأدوار
❽ يأخذون وقتًا
❾ تهتم بـ



New friends

When you take part in a new sport, for example, you can easily make new friends. You might meet new people that you haven't met before. Playing together as a team in a game or a competition is a great experience ❹, and you might make friends for life.

New ideas

Have you ever felt confused ❺ or unsure ❻ when you're working on a project? We all feel like that sometimes. Imagine if you had a whole extra head full of ideas! Or two heads, or three! That's what being in a team is like. Two people have more ideas than one person, and a team of people has even more!

Learn to listen

Do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes turns ❼ to speak, and takes time ❽ to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an interest in ❾ other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.

Learn about yourself

Are you a leader or a follower? Followers and leaders are both important for the success of a team. Leaders inspire ⑩ and guide ⑪ their followers to achieve a common goal ⑫. Followers work to achieve the goals by working under the direction ⑬ of their leaders. When you work in a team, you find out what you're good at, and what you can help others with.

So, next time you work in a team, try hard to make the team successful. You will learn so much!

⑩ يُلهم
⑪ يُرشد - يُوَجِّه
⑫ هدف مشترك
⑬ توجيه - إشراف

Activity Book Text

A football game

Omar : How was the football game ❶ last weekend, Seif?

Seif : It was really good, thanks, Omar.

Omar : Did you win?

Seif : Yes, we won the game but it wasn't easy. We were losing in the first half ❷. Our captain ❸, Hesham, guided us on how to play the game in the second half ❹. That's why he's a good leader ❺. He had a great plan ❻ and we all followed it. We won because of good teamwork ❼.

Omar : That sounds great. You've been happier since you joined ❽ the football team.

Seif : Yes, I have. When we practice, we take turns ❾ to play in different positions so I've learned a lot. And I've made some good friends.

Omar : I'll come and watch your next game.

❶ مباراة كرة القدم
❷ الشوط الأول
❸ قائد الفريق
❹ الشوط الثاني
❺ قائد
❻ خطة
❼ عمل جماعي
❽ التحق
❾ نتبادل الأدوار



Exercises on Lessons 3 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

time – interest – take – part – turns

When you take ❶ .... in a competition with your friends, do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes ❷ .... to speak, and takes ❸ .... to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an ❹ .... in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:



give a presentation – had a test – start a school newspaper – was sick

A: If you ❶ ...., what would you do?

B: I would study a little bit every day.

A: If your friend ❷ ...., what would you do?

B: I would tell her to go to the doctor.

A: If you had to ❸ ...., what would you do?

B: I would make lots of notes, and practice it.

A: If you wanted to ❹ ...., what would you do?

B: I would talk to people in the school, and find out interesting stories.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

teamwork – half – joined – positions – leader

Omar : How was the football game last weekend, Seif?

Seif : It was really good. Thanks, Omar.

Omar : Did you win?

Seif : Yes, we won the game, but it wasn't easy. We were losing in the

first ❶ .... Our captain, Hesham, guided us on how to play the game in the second half. That's why he's a good ❷ .... He had a great plan and we all followed it. We won because of good teamwork.

Omar : That sounds great. You've been happier since you ❸ .... the football team.

Seif : Yes, I have. When we practice, we take turns to play in different ❹ ...., so I've learned a lot. And I've made some good friends.

Omar : I'll come and watch your next game.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. you - or listening - prefer - Do - talking?
   ▶ .... ?
2. like - Some people - working - own - on - their.
   ▶ ....
3. of - part - great - Being - is - a team.
   ▶ ....
4. of people - A team - has - one person - more ideas - than.
   ▶ ....
5. you - take - your team - turns - Did - in?
   ▶ .... ?

5 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

"Teamwork"

▸ Ideas to help you: stronger together - new friends - new ideas - learn to listen - learn about yourself

....
....
....
....
....

Term 2

Lesson 5 Language



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس







rush (v) يندفع - يتعجل	**flight** الطيران - رحلة جوية	**history** تاريخ	**poem** قصيدة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

project	مشروع	**advice**	نصيحة
rest (n)	راحة	**commands**	أوامر
information	معلومات	**instructions**	تعليمات
right	صحيح	**break (n)**	استراحة

Sentences & Expressions

have to	يضطر إلى	Try your best!	ابذل قصارى جهدك!
make a poster	يصنع ملصق	get (it) right	يفهم - (يفعل) شيء بشكل صحيح
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	make notes	يُدَوِّن ملاحظات
have a break	يأخذ فترة راحة	go to bed	يذهب للنوم
take time	يستغرق وقتًا	get ahead	يمضي قدمًا - يتقدم
look in books	يبحث في الكتب	in the library	في المكتبة
on a plane	على متن طائرة	plan out my ideas	أرتب أفكاري

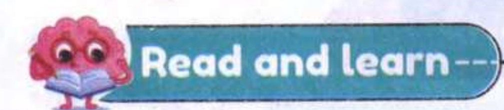
Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
check	يتحقق - يتأكد	checked	checked
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped
rush	يندفع - يتعجل	rushed	rushed
share	يشارك	shared	shared
try	يحاول	tried	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
make	يَصنع	made	made
tell	يُخبر	told	told
keep	يُبقي	kept	kept
read	يقرأ	read	read
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
think	يعتقد - يظن	thought	thought
find	يجد	found	found
say	يقول	said	said





Try your best!

by Fares

At school, we had a project
On the history of flight.
I had to make a poster,
But I couldn't get it right.



My dad told me to stop and think.
"Take time to plan," he said.
"Don't rush, use your best ideas,
That's how to get ahead."

My friend told me to ask for help.
"It's good to check," he said.
"If you're not sure, ask a question,
Don't keep it in your head."

My mom asked me to try my best.
"You can't go wrong," she said.
"But don't forget to have a break!
When you're tired, go to bed!"

My teacher told me to try again.
"Don't be sad," she said.
"Look in books for more ideas,
Make notes on what you've read."

And so, I asked, I read, and tried,
I stopped and had a rest.
Then I planned out my ideas,
My poster was the best!



Grammar Study

Reported speech (commands and requests)

تحويل صيغة الأمر والطلب إلى غير المباشر

- **We use reported speech when we tell someone what another person said.**

The steps

- **خطوات تحويل صيغة الأمر من مباشر إلى غير مباشر:**

1. We use a reporting verb (told).
   نستخدم فعل إبلاغ (**told**) متبوعاً بالمفعول (الشخص الموجه إليه الأمر).
2. We omit the quotation marks and the comma.
   نحذف علامتي التنصيص (" ") والفاصلة (,).
3. If the command is positive, we use (to + infinitive).
   في حالة الأمر المثبت، نربط بالرابط (**to**) ثم الفعل في المصدر.
4. If the command is negative, we put the word (not) before (to).
   في حالة الأمر المنفي، نربط بـ (**not to**) ثم الفعل في المصدر.
5. We change pronouns and possessive adjectives according to the meaning.
   نُغير الضمائر وصفات الملكية، إن وُجدَت، طبقًا لمعنى الجملة.

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
I	he - she	you (ضمير مفعول)	me - us - them
we	they	my	his - her
you (ضمير فاعل)	I - we - they	your	my - our - their
me	him - her	our	their
us	them		

Examples:

- "Go to bed early, Omar," the father said.
  - ▶ The father told Omar to go to bed early.
- Ahmed said to Ramy, "Wear a jumper and a heavy coat. It's very cold."
  - ▶ Ahmed told Ramy to wear a jumper and a heavy coat. It was very cold.
- "Don't close the window, Mai. I need some fresh air," said Rania.
  - ▶ Rania told Mai not to close the window. She needed some fresh air.
- The teacher said to Nahla, "Don't forget your homework."
  - ▶ The teacher told Nahla not to forget her homework.

The steps

خطوات تحويل الطلب (Request) من مباشر إلى غير مباشر:

نفس خطوات تحويل صيغة الأمر هي نفسها خطوات تحويل الطلب، إلا أننا نستخدم الفعل (asked) بدلاً من (told) وتُحذَف كلمة (please) إن وُجدت من جملة غير المباشر.

Example:

- "Give me your pen, please, Heba" said Ali.
  - ▶ Ali asked Heba to give him her pen.

Exercises on Lesson 5



1 Choose the correct answer:

1. His friend told him (at - of - to) ask for help.
2. His teacher told him to (tried - try - trying) again and to make notes on what he read.

3. Dad asked (my - I - me) to tidy my room.
4. His mom asked (him - he - his) to try his best.
5. His dad (said - told - says) him to stop and think.
6. "You can't go wrong," my mom (tells - told - said).
7. Ms Dina told us to (read - reading - reads) pages 15 to 20.
8. Dad asked me (at - of - to) put out the garbage.
9. "It's good to check," (tells - told - said) my friend.
10. Dad asked me to (helps - help - helped) my little brother.
11. My mom asked me (to - not to - for) forget to do my homework.
12. Dad (tells - told - said), "Can you help your little brother?"
13. My teacher told me (at - of - to) look in books for more ideas.
14. My teacher (said - told - says) me to make notes on what I'd read.
15. My mom asked me to (goes - go - going) to bed when I was tired.
16. My dad told me (not rush - rush - not to rush).
17. My dad told me to (use - used - uses) my best ideas.
18. Ms Salwa told us to (answering - answers - answer) the questions with full sentences.
19. Ms Dalia (said - told - says) us to do some research on the internet.
20. Dad asked me to (puts - put - putting) away the dishes.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Fares had to do a project on the history of flight. He had to make a poster, but he couldn't get it right. His friend told him to ask for help. His friend said it was good to check. His teacher told him to try again, to make notes on what he read and to look in books for more ideas. His mom asked him to try his best and to have a break when he's tired. His dad told him to stop and think and to take time to plan. So Fares asked, he read, and he tried. He planned his ideas, and his poster was the best!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Fares had to make a (report - painting - poster), but he couldn't get it right.

2. His (friend - mom - dad) told him to ask for help.

3. The underlined word "planned" means (checked - arranged - shared).

B Answer these questions:

4. What did Fares have to do?

▶ ....

5. What did the teacher ask Fares to do?

▶ ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1. outside and play - Dad - me - told - to go.

▶ ....

2. asked - Dalia - to help - with her homework - me.

▶ ....

3. me - to wash - Mom - asked - the dishes.

▶ ....

4. to open - Ms Manal - Rashad - his book - told.

▶ ....

4 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nahla:

Tell her about a school project you have done recently. Tell her what the project was, who helped you, and how it was in the end. Your email address is sama@school.net and your friend's email address is nahla@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

Lesson 6 Writing: A personal statement



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



personal statement
بيان شخصي



independently
بشكل مستقل



confident
واثق



group activities
أنشطة جماعية



future goals
أهداف مستقبلية



interests
اهتمامات



community
مجتمَع



wall collage
مُلصَق جداري (كولاج جداري)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

subjects	مواد دراسية	**science club**	نادي العلوم
grade	صفّ دراسي - مرحلة دراسية	**reasons**	أسباب
PE (physical education)	التربية البدنية	**topic**	موضوع
matches	مباريات	**chart**	جدول - مُخَطّط بياني

introduction	مقدمة	**inventor**	مخترع
subheadings	عناوين فرعية	**scientist**	عالِم
sociable	شخص اجتماعي	**reader**	قارئ
independent	مستقل	**career**	مهنة - حياة مهنية
Ras Mohammed National Park	محمية رأس محمد الوطنية	**design (n)**	تصميم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered
design	يصمم	designed	designed
compete	ينافس	competed	competed
include	يشمل - يُدْرِج	included	included
challenge	يتحدى	challenged	challenged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
win	يفوز	won	won
take part	يشارك - يشترك	took part	taken part

Tip!

- A personal statement is a text about YOU! **You** might write one if you're starting a new school, if you **want to join** a team, or are volunteering in your community.

البيان الشخصي هو نصٌ يتحدث عنك! يمكنك كتابة بيان شخصي إذا بدأتَ الحضور في مدرسة جديدة، أو إذا كنتَ ترغب في الانضمام إلى فريق، أو إذا كنتَ متطوعًا في مجتمعك.

- Include lots of information and reasons. This helps the reader really get to know you.
قم بإدراج الكثير من المعلومات والأسباب. هذا يساعد القارئ على التعرُّف عليك حقًا.

- Use subheadings to tell the reader the topic of each part of the personal statement.
استخدم العناوين الفرعية لإخبار القارئ بموضوع كل جزء من البيان الشخصي.

- Personal statements often use contracted forms, for example: *I'm*
غالبًا ما تُستخدم أشكال مختصرة للكلمات في البيانات الشخصية، على سبيل المثال: *I'm*



Read and learn

Personal statement by Noha Tousson, aged 11



Introduction

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident ❶ – I'm happy to share my ideas ❷ in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently ❸, too. I enjoy taking part ❹ in group activities ❺.

My favorite subjects

I enjoy studying history and math. I love science, too, because I want to understand how the world works. I also like PE ❻. I've played in some important volleyball matches this year. My team doesn't always win, but it's fun anyway!

My interests

I go to a science club ❼ after school. I'm competing ❽ in a science competition next week with three friends. We're designing a new robot. I hope our design wins the competition!

❶ واثِق
❷ مشاركة أفكاري
❸ بشكل مستقل
❹ المشاركة - الاشتراك
❺ أنشطة جماعية
❻ مادة التربية البدنية
❼ نادي العلوم
❽ أتنافس



My future goals

Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum. When I'm older, I'd like to be a scientist ⑨ or an inventor ⑩. My science teacher told me to work hard so that I could help people and make lives better.

⑨ عالِم
⑩ مبتكر - مخترع



Personal statement by Wael Ibrahim, aged 10



Introduction

My name is Wael, and I'm in Grade 6. I'm independent ①, but I also enjoy working in a team. I'm sociable ②, and I like making new friends.

My favorite subjects

I love English, math, and science. I love music, too, because it challenges ③ me. I've taken part in two school concerts ④ this year.

My interests

I go to an art club ⑤ after school. I'm taking part in an art show ⑥ next month. It's really exciting. I'm working on a big wall collage ⑦ with two other students.

My future goals

Next year, I'd like to study more science and learn more about the environment. I'd like to visit the Ras Mohammed National Park ⑧. When I'm older, I'd like a career that helps the environment. Dad told me to work hard, so that I could go to university.

① مستقل
② اجتماعي
③ تتحدى
④ حفلات موسيقية
⑤ نادي الفنون
⑥ عرض فني
⑦ ملصق جداري
⑧ محمية رأس محمد الوطنية

Grammar Study



enjoy - love - like / would like to - want to

Remember

enjoy - love - like ⟶ v-ing / noun

Examples:

- I enjoy working in a team.
- I like making new friends.



would like to / want to ⟶ inf. (المصدر)

Examples:

- I would like to do more science activities.
- I want to understand how the world works.

Exercises on Lesson 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

scientist – competing – competition – museum – design

I go to a science club after school. I'm competing in a science ❶ .... next week with three friends. We're designing a new robot. I hope our ❷ .... wins the competition! Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science ❸ .... When I'm older, I'd like to be a ❹ .... or an inventor. My science teacher told me to work hard so that I could help people and make lives better.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

ideas – team – activities – confident – hard

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work ❶ .... and I'm confident. I'm happy to share my ❷ .... in front of the class. I enjoy working in a ❸ ...., and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group ❹ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

club – independent – collage – sociable – team

My name is Wael, and I'm in Grade 6. I'm ❶ ...., but I also enjoy working in a team. I'm ❷ ...., and I like making new friends. I go to an art ❸ .... after school. I'm taking part in an art show next month. It's really exciting. I'm working on a big wall ❹ .... with two other students.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. I'd like to (to visiting - visit - to visit) the Ras Mohammed National Park.
2. I enjoy (worked - working - work) in a team.
3. What would she like (to visiting - visit - to visit) next year?
4. I enjoy (taking - take - to taking) part in group activities.
5. I want to (worked - working - work) independently.
6. Reem would (like - liking - likes) to go to the future.
7. I enjoy (study - to studying - studying) history and math.
8. I'd like to (am - be - was) a scientist or an inventor.
9. I'm sociable, and I like (making - make - to making) new friends.
10. I'd like (to study - study - studying) more science and learn more about the environment.
11. Does Noha like (worked - working - work) in a team?
12. I would like (do - doing - to do) more science activities and visit a science museum.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. does - subjects - What - like - Noha?
▶ .... ?

2. activities - I - enjoy - taking - in group - part.
▶ ....

3. she - in - like - a team - working - Does?
▶ .... ?

4. designing - robot - We're - new - a.
▶ ....

6 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

"My personal statement"

▶ Remember to include: an introduction - your favorite subjects - your interests - your future goals

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 7 Story: Lost in the oasis



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



the Scouts فريق الكشافة



leader قائد



ripped in half تمزقت إلى نصفين



flashlight كشاف - مصباح يدوي



oasis واحة



blew (past of blow) هَبّت - طَيَّرت



backpack حقيبة ظهر



first aid kit حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

adventure	مغامرة	**compass**	بوصلة
journey	رحلة	**direction**	اتجاه
picnic	نزهة خلوية	**map**	خريطة
desert	صحراء	**north**	شَمال
wind	رياح	**road**	طريق

prize	جائزة	**suddenly**	فجأة
pieces	قِطَع	**unfortunately**	لسوء الحظ
lost (adj)	تائه	**luckily**	لحسن الحظ
sneakers	حذاء رياضي	**heavy**	ثقيلة
without	بدون	**lighter**	أخف وزنًا

Prepositions & Expressions

walk in groups	يمشون في مجموعات	out of (his) hands	خارج عن إرادته
determined to win	مُصَمِّم على الفوز	the hands of a watch	عقارب الساعة
on the bus	في الأتوبيس (الحافلة)	to the other side of	إلي الجانب الآخر من
take out	يُخْرِج	the meeting place	نقطة (مكان) الالتقاء
got off the bus	ينزل من الأتوبيس (الحافلة)	allowed to	مسموح (لهم) بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
pack	يحزم (حقيبة)	packed	packed
check	يفحص - يتفقّد	checked	checked
determine	يعزم - يصمم	determined	determined
allow	يسمح	allowed	allowed
follow	يتابع - يتبع	followed	followed
rip	يمزق	ripped	ripped
fix	يصلح	fixed	fixed
point	يوجه - يشير	pointed	pointed
reach	يصل إلى	reached	reached
damage	يُدَمِّر - يُتْلِف - يضر	damaged	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
tell	يُخبر	told	told
meet	يقابل	met	met
win	يفوز	won	won
keep	يُبقِي	kept	kept
give	يُعطِي	gave	given
set off	ينطلق	set off	set off
blow	تَهُبّ - تُطَيِّر	blew	blown
catch	يُمسك - يلحق بـ	caught	caught
hold	يمسك	held	held
break	يكسر	broke	broken



Read and learn



Story: Lost in the oasis



Seleem was really excited to take part in the Scouts' ❶ desert adventure ❷. The day before, he packed ❸ his backpack. However, it was very heavy, and so his mom told him to check if he really needed all that was in it. He packed it again, with her help. This time, he only put in what he needed. He now had a flashlight ❹, a first aid kit, and a water bottle. His friend Asser told him that he would take a compass, so Seleem didn't pack his.

❶ الكشافين - أفراد الكشّافة
❷ مغامرة
❸ حَزَم - وَضَّب
❹ مصباح (كشّاف) يدوي
❺ واحة
❻ مكان اللقاء (الالتقاء)

They left at ten o'clock the next morning. Everybody met at school, and the Scouts and their teacher traveled by bus to the other side of the oasis ❺. The teacher said they would walk in groups to the meeting place ❻.

The Scouts were put into groups, and each group had a leader ❼. The group leaders were older. There was a prize for the team who got to the meeting place first, and Seleem was determined ❽ to win.

However, it wasn't that easy ...

On the bus, the teacher checked everybody's bags Unfortunately, Asser's bag was too heavy! The teacher told him to take some things out. Seleem and his friends helped Asser make his bag lighter ❾. He kept his lunch, his sweater, and his map. He took out his sneakers ❿, some games, and some potato chips. And he also took out ⓫ his compass.

❼ قائد
❽ عازم - مُصَمِّم
❾ أخف
❿ حذاء رياضي
⓫ أخرج
⓬ نزلوا (من الحافلة)
⓭ انطلقت
⓮ طيّرَت
⓯ مُزِّقت (قُطِعَت) إلى نصفين
⓰ توجيهها إلى
⓱ عدة إسعافات أولية

When they got off ⓬ the bus, the teacher gave each group a map. He told them they had to go north. The Scouts weren't allowed to use their phones. The groups set off ⓭, using the map to follow the road. It was very hot, so after a while, Seleem and his group stopped to have some water. They sat under a tree, but there was suddenly a strong wind. It blew ⓮ the map out of Seleem's hands! They ran after it, but when they caught it, the map ripped in half ⓯.

The group couldn't fix the map, so they held the two pieces together. The map was difficult to read, and they weren't sure where to go. Seleem knew they had to go north, so he asked Asser for his compass. Asser looked in his bag, but he didn't have it!

Luckily, Samir had a really good idea. He knew how to use the hands on his watch to find north, by pointing them at ⓰ the sun.

After a few minutes, the Scouts knew where to go. The group set off again, following Samir. They were the last group to reach the meeting place. However, they won a prize for having the best idea to find north!

Next time, Seleem will make sure he packs a flashlight, a first aid kit ⓱, a water bottle ... and his compass!

Activity Book Text

Amina's mom takes charge ❶

One day, Amina, her sister Nadia, her brother Magdy, and her mom were going on an adventure ❷. Mom was driving them to the oasis to see their dad. He was working on an engineering project ❸ at the oasis for a few weeks. Amina was really looking forward to ❹ seeing him. Mom packed ❺ lots of food and water so they could have a picnic on the way. They set off early because the journey was long and it wasn't a good road. Before they set off ❻, Mom asked Amina to run back into the house to get two picnic rugs ❼.

At lunchtime, Mom stopped the car and they had a delicious picnic. Amina noticed that it was getting windy ❽. It looked like there might be a sandstorm ❾. They quickly set off again and Amina was right. Soon they were in the middle ❿ of a sandstorm and it was difficult to drive the car. So, Mom stopped the car and they waited. After 20 minutes, the wind stopped but now the car was stuck ⓫ in the sand! The car wheels turned around but the car didn't move forward.

Everybody got out of the car and looked at the sand. Nadia started to cry. Mom took charge and told the children not to worry. She asked Magdy to get the camping shovel ⓬, and dig some of the sand from in front of the car. She told Amina to get the picnic rugs. When Magdy stopped digging ⓭, Mom put the picnic rugs on the ground, in front of the wheels. Then she told the children to get into the car. She turned on the engine ⓮ and the wheels ⓯ turned around on the picnic rugs.

Slowly, the car moved forward. Soon, the car was out of the sand and they were on the road! The children laughed. Amina's mom drove very carefully on the sandy road ⓰, and an hour later the family arrived at the oasis. They all had a great story to tell Amina's dad!

❶ تتولى المسؤولية
❷ مغامرة
❸ مشروع هندسي
❹ تتطلع إلى
❺ جهّزت - حضّرت
❻ ينطلقوا - يتحركوا
❼ سجاجيد
❽ عاصف
❾ عاصفة رملية
❿ في منتصف
⓫ عالقة
⓬ جاروف
⓭ حَفْر
⓮ محرك
⓯ عجلات - إطارات
⓰ طريق رملي

Exercises on Lesson 7

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

packed – flashlight – aid – backpack – desert

Seleem was really excited to take part in the Scouts' ❶ .... adventure. The day before, he packed his ❷ .... However, it was very heavy, and so his mom told him to check if he really needed all that was in it. He ❸ .... it again, with her help. This time, he only put in what he needed. He now had a flashlight, a first ❹ .... kit, and a water bottle. His friend Asser told him that he would take a compass, so Seleem didn't pack his.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

journey – adventure – set – oasis – picnic

One day, Amina, her sister Nadia, her brother Magdy, and her mom were going on an ❶ .... Mom was driving them to the ❷ .... to see their dad. He was working on an engineering project at the oasis for a few weeks. Amina was really looking forward to seeing him. Mom packed lots of food and water so they could have a ❸ .... on the way. They set off early because the journey was long and it wasn't a good road. Before they ❹ .... off, Mom asked Amina to run back into the house to get two picnic rugs.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Asser - asked - Samir - for - compass - his. ▶ ....
2. Seleem - did - backpack - his - When - pack? ▶ .... ?
3. Scouts - The - go - knew - to - where. ▶ ....
4. did - Seleem's - a prize - Why - group - win? ▶ .... ?
5. was - to - determined - win - Seleem. ▶ ....



Unit 8 Test 5



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Some people like to (talk - hear - read - write) a lot. However, it's important to listen, too.
2. A team works best when everybody takes (part - time - interest - turns) to speak and listen.
3. You might (charge - challenge - check - change) your opinion when you listen to other people's ideas.
4. You can learn a lot when you take an (idea - interest - aim - opinion) in other people's ideas.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

Leader – team – follower – success – common

Are you a leader or a ❶ ....? Followers and leaders are both important for the ❷ .... of a team. Leaders inspire and guide their followers to achieve a ❸ .... goal. Followers work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders. When you work in a ❹ ...., you find out what you're good at, and what you can help others with.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

We learn a lot of subjects at school. Everything we study has some uses in our lives. We learn our own language, Arabic, to be able to tell others what we want and understand what others tell us. We learn science to tell us about living things. Foreign languages make us communicate with other people and know how other people think and talk. Math helps us to think. Computers are also very important because they can do sums quickly and store information. They can also work with words and numbers. History tells us about our own country and the people of the world around us.

Geography tells us about plants, animals and people, where and how they live and what they do. Exercises and games help us grow strong and keep us fit.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. (History - Math - Science - Geography) tells us about living things.
2. The opposite of the underlined word "Foreign" is (International - Local - Global - Far).
3. The passage mentioned (four - five - six - seven) school subjects.

B Answer these questions:

4. How are exercises and games useful to us?

▶ ....

5. Why do we learn Arabic?

▶ ....

The Reader News Team (4Ms)

4 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (2Ms)

1. Sometimes, the newspaper team had problems to solve. ( )
2. On social media, people always write a lot of words. ( )
3. The local magazine in their town heard about what the children were doing. ( )
4. The newspaper team's success was good for the school. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. What idea did Mrs Basma have for the children?

▶ ....

6. What happened later in the year?

▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. My friend told me (not keep - keep to - not to keep - keep) the questions in my head.
2. I (would - am - do - were) taking part in an art show next month.
3. My teacher told me to (tries - try - trying - tried) again.
4. I'm (work - works - worked - working) on a big wall collage with two other students.
5. My friend (asked - ask - say - said) me to show him my new bag.
6. I'm competing in a science competition (tomorrow - last - past - next) week with three friends.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. teacher - told - My science - hard - me - to work.
   ▶ ....
2. you - are - the weekend - on - What - doing?
   ▶ .... ?
3. going to - Jumana - isn't - week - school - next.
   ▶ ....

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Jana: (5Ms)

Tell her how you are getting ready for the next final exams. Tell her how you plan your study and who helps you when you need help. Your email address is manal@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is jana@yahoo.com.

From:
To:
Subject:
....
....
....
....

Review 4 Test 6 on Units (7-8)

Total
30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Shady is (excited - embarrassed - afraid - patient) about this month.
2. Shady is anxious about his (history and English - history and math - history and Arabic - history and science) tests.
3. There's a charity sale at school in (three - four - five - two) weeks.
4. Books, cakes, and toys will be sold to raise (money - children - animals - books) for charity.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

paste - pain - mint - medicine - inventions

The Ancient Egyptians invented lots of new things. Some of those ❶ .... are still used today. The Ancient Egyptians were interested in health and ❷ .... They used herbs to stop ❸ .... and diseases. They invented a type of toothpaste. It was made with ❹ ...., salt, flowers, and pepper which was mixed into a paste.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

My name is Khaled. Today was the last day of school before summer vacation. In our last class, Mr Bashir asked us to prepare a presentation about driverless cars. He said, "Would driverless cars be safer or more dangerous than normal cars?" Then he showed us an interactive model of a driverless car. If I could drive, I wouldn't want a driverless car. I don't think a driverless car would be as safe as a car with a driver. I think I'd feel anxious. But school has finished for today, and it's the beginning of summer vacation! I am going to spend my vacation in Hurghada with my cousins. I'm really excited! They've planned lots of things to do.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Today was the last day of school before (winter - fall - spring - summer) vacation.

2. Mr Bashir asked us to prepare a presentation about (robots - spaceships - driverless cars - rockets).

3. The opposite of the underlined word "dangerous" is (safe - delicious - famous - precious).

B Answer these questions:

4. How would Khaled feel towards driverless cars?

▶ ....

5. Where is Khaled going to spend his vacation?

▶ ....

The Reader News Team (4Ms)

4 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (2Ms)

1. Tarek was a good leader. ( )

2. Hatem was the editor of the newspaper. ( )

3. Bassant organized a beach clean-up. ( )

4. The newspaper team made a flyer about Kitty. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. What was the problem with the team's first video?

▶ ....

6. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody!"?

▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. If I (designed - designs - designing - design) a bike, I'd make one with solar panels.

2. Ahmed is tall. Kareem is tall, too. Ahmed is (taller - the tallest - as tall as - as tall) Kareem.

3. If everyone recycled plastic, we (would have - wouldn't have - are having - have) so much pollution in the ocean.

4. (Were - Was - Is - Are) Mona looking after her little sister tomorrow?

5. Mrs Basma asked us (prepare - to prepare - preparing - prepared) a presentation about driverless cars.

6. Mom asked me (at - of - for - to) put away the clothes.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. invention - What - water - cleans - dirty?

▶ ....?

2. park - the - to - going - We're - tomorrow.

▶ ....

3. A filter - stop - diseases - straw - can.

▶ ....

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nadine: (5Ms)

Tell her about your next summer vacation. Where will you go? With whom? What are you going to do there? Your email address is nesma@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is nadine@gmail.com.

From:

To:

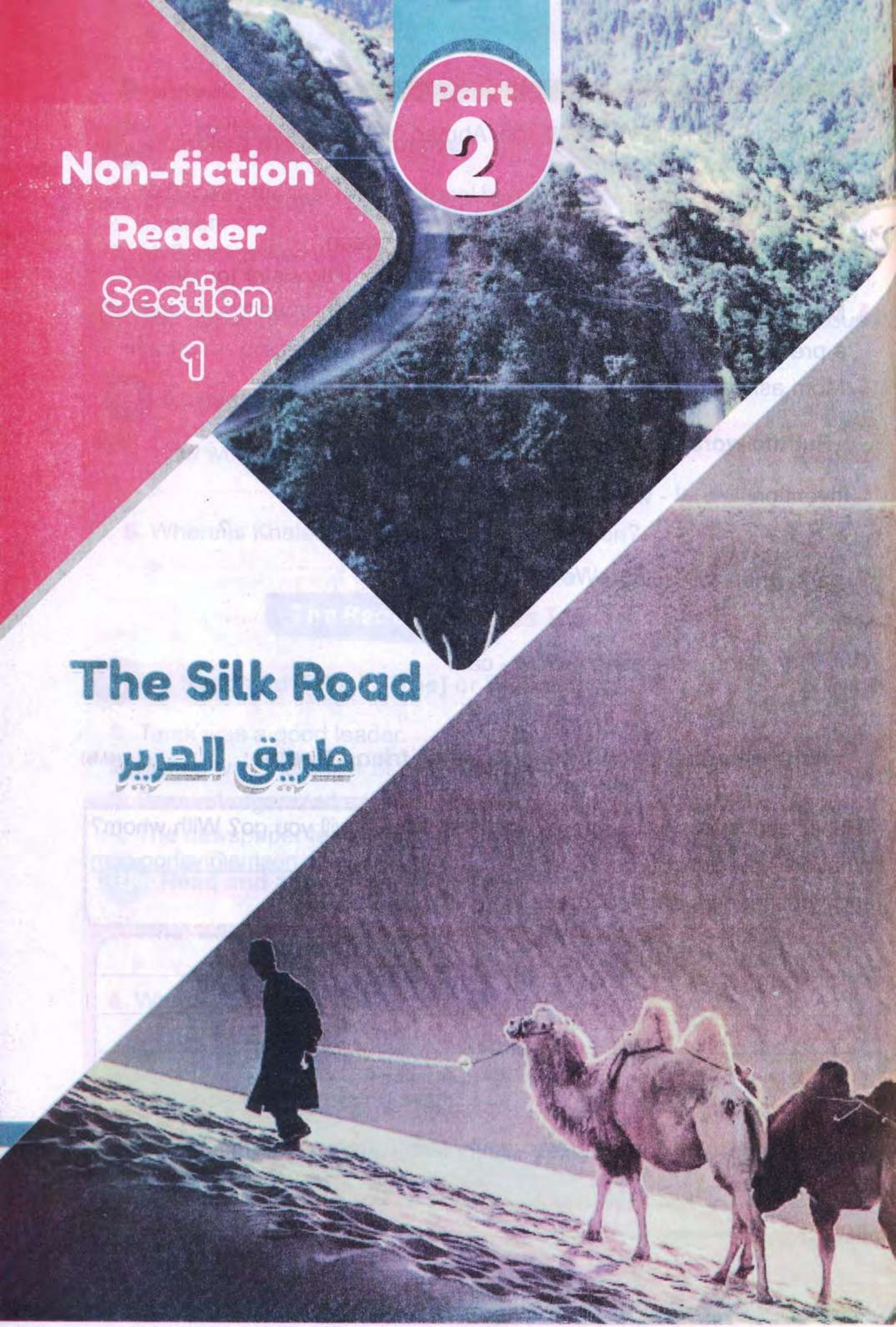
Subject:

....

....

....

....


Part
2
Non-fiction
Reader
Section
1
The Silk Road
طريق الحرير

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

Paragraph (1)

buy	يشتري	ships	سفن
sell	يبيع	trains	قطارات
goods	بضائع - سلع	trucks	شاحنات
move	ينقل	shop	يتسوق
country	بلد - دولة	stores	متاجر

Paragraph (2)

trade route	طريق تجاري	covering	تغطي
opened	افتتح	nearly	ما يقارب
rich city	مدينة غنية	types	أنواع
China	الصين	land	الأرض
reached	وصلت	across	عبر
the Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	deserts	صحاري
actually	في الواقع	mountains	جبال
routes	طرق	important	هام

Paragraph (3)

trade (v) (n)	يتاجر - تجارة	precious stones	أحجار كريمة
the east	الشرق	perfumes	عطور
Europe	أوروبا	spices	توابل
the west	الغرب	wool	صوف
silk	حرير	silver	فضة
expensive	غالٍ - ثمين	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
material	مادة	items	سلع - أشياء
made in	صنعت في	made from	مصنوعة من
possible	ممكن	glass	زجاج

Paragraph (4)

traveling	السفر	dry weather	الطقس الجاف
hard	قاس - صعب	steal	يسرق
dangerous	خطيرة	money	نقود
experienced	ذوي خبرة	goods	بضائع
cross	يعبر - يجتاز	safer	أكثر أمانًا
camels	جمال	traders	تجار
form of transportation	وسيلة مواصلات	large groups	مجموعات كبيرة
long distances	مسافات طويلة	caravans	كرافانات - قوافل

Paragraph (5)

cultures	ثقافات	paper	ورق
shared ideas	تشاركوا الأفكار	invention	اختراع
music	موسيقى	around the world	حول العالم
crafts	مصنوعات يدوية - حرف	studied the stars	درسوا النجوم

Paragraph (6)

buildings	مباني	Damascus	دمشق
history	تاريخ	inns	فنادق - نُزُل
towns	مدن	caravanserais	خان - نُزُل مسافرين
along	على طول - طوال	rest (v) (n)	راحة - يرتاح
Constantinople (Istanbul)	القسطنطينية (إسطنبول)	nowadays	في الوقت الحاضر

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

route	: a road or something you can follow on a journey
trade	: to buy and sell things
inn	: a building where people can sleep, eat, and drink
goods	: things that people buy and sell
trader	: someone who buys and sells things
steal	: to take something from a person without asking or paying
thesaurus	: a book in which words are put into groups with other words that have similar meanings

The Silk Road



Paragraph (1)

Today, it's easy to buy and sell goods ❶ in different parts of the world. When we want to move things from one country to another, we can use big ships ❷, fast trains, trucks ❸, or planes. Because of the internet, we can shop ❹ in stores that are a long way from our homes. However, many years ago, it was difficult to buy and sell things from far away.

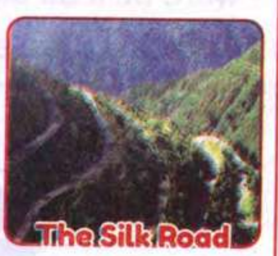
❶ بضائع - سِلَع ❷ سفن ❸ شاحنات ❹ يتسوّق - يتبضّع

Paragraph (2)

The Silk Road ❶ changed this. In 130 BCE, a trade route ❷ was opened from Xi'an ❸ , a large, rich city in China. Over time, it reached the Mediterranean Sea ❹. Today, we call it the Silk Road, but it was actually a number of routes covering nearly 6,500 kilometers. These routes went through many countries and different types of land, across deserts and mountains. The Silk Road was very important for over 1,500 years.

❶ طريق الحرير ❷ طريق تجاري ❸ مدينة شيان ❹ البحر المتوسط

Paragraph (3)

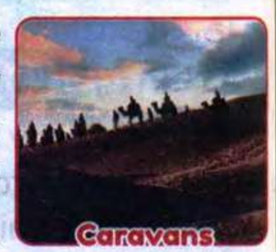

The Silk Road

The Silk Road has its name because people traded silk between China, in the east, and the countries we now know as Europe, in the west. Silk was a very expensive material, and at first, it was only made in China. The Silk Road made it possible for people in other countries to buy it for the first time. Many other things were traded on the Silk Road, too. From China, people also sold things such as precious stones ❶, perfumes, tea, and spices ❷. From Europe, people sold things such as horses, wool ❸, silver, olive oil, and items made from glass.

❶ الأحجار الكريمة ❷ توابل ❸ صوف



Paragraph (4)



Traveling on the Silk Road was hard. The roads were sometimes old and dangerous, and people had to be very experienced ❶ to cross the deserts. Camels were an important form of transportation ❷ because they could travel long distances ❸ in hot, dry weather. Sometimes, people tried to steal ❹ money or goods, and it was safer ❺ for traders to travel in large groups, called caravans ❻.

❶ ذوي خبرة - متمرسين ❷ شكل من أشكال النقل ❸ مسافات ❹ يسرق - ينهب ❺ أكثر أمانًا ❻ قوافل

Paragraph (5)

However, the Silk Road was important for more than just buying and selling goods. Traders ❶ met people from other cultures when they traveled to new places. This meant that they shared ideas and things from their culture, such as food, music, and crafts ❷. For example, paper was an invention ❸ from China that traveled around the world. Some people studied the stars, and so they taught other people what they knew.

❶ التُّجَّار ❷ حِرَف - صناعات يدوية ❸ اختراع - ابتكار

Paragraph (6)

Lots of places and buildings, have an interesting history because of the Silk Road. Many towns along the routes became rich, important cities, such as Constantinople (now Istanbul) and Damascus. Large inns ❶ - or caravanserais - were built as places for travelers to eat and rest, too.

Nowadays, it's easy and quick to move goods, but the Silk Road made it possible for countries to trade goods and share ideas, over 2,000 years ago!

❶ فنادق صغيرة - نُزُل

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. Today, it's easy to buy and sell goods in different parts of the world. (.......)
2. Many years ago, it was easy to buy and sell things from far away. (.......)
3. The Silk Road was opened from Xi'an in 130 BCE. (.......)

4. The Silk Road was actually a number of routes covering nearly 6,500 kilometers. (.......)
5. The Silk Road was very important for over 1,500 years. (.......)
6. The Silk Road has its name because silk was traded between China and Europe. (.......)
7. Silk was only made in China at first. (.......)
8. Traveling on the Silk Road was easy. (.......)
9. Camels were an important form of transportation on the Silk Road. (.......)
10. The Silk Road was important only for buying and selling goods. (.......)
11. It was safer for traders to travel in large groups, called caravans. (.......)
12. Paper was an invention from China that traveled around the world. (.......)
13. Horses, wool, silver, olive oil, and glass items were sold from Europe. (.......)
14. Many towns along the Silk Road routes became poor and unimportant cities. (.......)
15. Constantinople is now known as China. (.......)
16. Caravanserais were built as places for travelers to eat and rest. (.......)
17. The Silk Road made it impossible for countries to trade goods and share ideas. (.......)
18. Nowadays, it's difficult and slow to move goods. (.......)
19. Many towns along the routes became rich, important cities such as Constantinople and Damascus. (.......)

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. Where did the Silk Road start? SB

▶ ....

2. Why was the Silk Road established in 130 BCE?

▶ ....

3. What types of land did the Silk Road cross? SB

▶ ....

4. What was the primary material traded from China on the Silk Road that gave the route its name?

▶ ....

5. What goods did people from China sell? SB

▶ ....

6. What goods did people from Europe sell? SB

▶ ....

7. How long was the Silk Road important for international trade?

▶ ....

8. Which animals were an important form of transportation on the Silk Road?

▶ ....

9. Why were camels an important form of transportation on the Silk Road?

▶ ....

10. How did traders travel safely on the Silk Road?

▶ ....

11. Why were caravans safer for traders traveling on the Silk Road?

▶ ....

12. How was the Silk Road important for more than just buying and selling goods?

▶ ....

13. Which two rich and important cities benefited from the Silk Road?

▶ ....

14. Why was the Silk Road sometimes dangerous? SB

▶ ....

15. What things from their culture did people share? SB

▶ ....

16. How has the internet changed the way we shop for goods from far away places?

▶ ....

17. How did the Silk Road change trade and culture in the past? AB

▶ ....

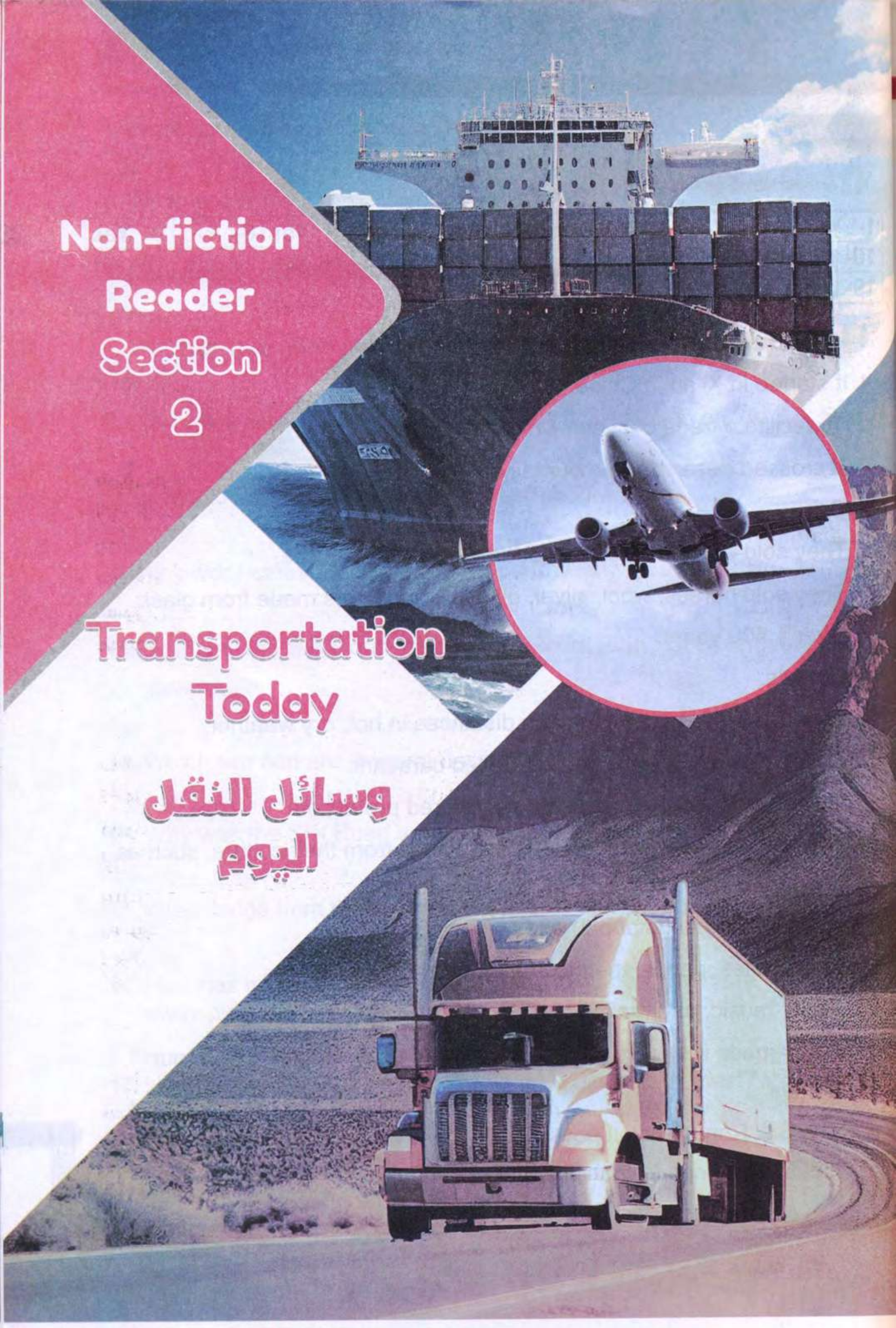
Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes	2- No	3- Yes	4- Yes	5- Yes	6- Yes	7- Yes	8- No	9- Yes
10- No	11-Yes	12-Yes	13-Yes	14- No	15- No	16-Yes	17- No	18- No
19-Yes								

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. It started in Xi'an in China.
2. To facilitate trade between China and Europe.
3. It crossed deserts and mountains.
4. Silk.
5. They sold precious stones, perfumes, tea, and spices.
6. They sold horses, wool, silver, olive oil, and items made from glass.
7. Over 1,500 years.
8. Camels.
9. Because they could travel long distances in hot, dry weather.
10. They traveled in large groups, called caravans.
11. Because traveling in large groups offered protection.
12. Traveling traders shared ideas and things from their culture, such as food, music, and crafts.
13. Constantinople (Istanbul) and Damascus.
14. Sometimes, people tried to steal money or goods.
15. Food, music, and crafts.
16. It has made it easy to shop in stores that are a long way from our homes.
17. The Silk Road made it possible for countries to trade goods, share ideas and things from their culture over 2,000 years ago.


Non-fiction
Reader
Section
2
Transportation
Today
وسائل النقل
اليوم

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

Paragraph (1)

transport	ينقل	farther than	أبعد من
by sea	عبر البحر	vehicles	مركبات
instead	بدلًا من	carry	تحمل
faster	أسرع	cargo	شحنة - حمولة - بضاعة

Paragraph (2)

journey	رحلة طويلة	sea route	طريق بحري
Asia	آسيا	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
continent	قارة	connected	رَبَط
Africa	أفريقيا	Port Said	بورسعيد
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	Suez	السويس
quicker	أسرع	long	طويلة

Paragraph (3)

nearly	تقريبًا	goods	بضائع
cargo ships	سفن الشحن (تجارية)	include	تشمل
businesses	أنشطة تجارية	cotton	قطن
global	عالمي - دولي	rice	أرز
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	onions	بصل
huge	ضخمة	import	يستورد
export	يصدر	metal	معدن

Paragraph (4)

transportation	النقل	planes	طائرات
technology	تكنولوجيا	fast	سريع
changing	متغيرة	trains	قطارات
all the time	طوال الوقت	look like	تشبه

Vocabulary Study (AB Activity Book)

cargo	: the goods that a ship carries
cotton	: a natural material used to make clothes
import	: to buy goods and bring them into your country
global	: about the whole world
export	: to sell goods to a different country

Transportation Today



Paragraph (1)

The Silk Road was a very important trade route ❶ for around 1,500 years. However, over time, people started to use ships to transport ❷ goods by sea instead, and so it became less important. Ships were faster and could travel farther than vehicles ❸ and animals on the road. They could also carry more cargo ❹.

❶ طريق تجاري ❷ ينقل ❸ مركبات ❹ شحنة - حمولة - بضاعة



Huge cargo ships transport goods all around the world

Paragraph (2)

For many years, people made very long, and sometimes dangerous, journeys ❶ by sea from Asia, around the continent ❷ of Africa, to Europe. However, in 1869, the Suez Canal ❸ was opened to help with this problem. It was built to make a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea. It connected Port Said, on the Mediterranean Sea, with the city of Suez. The Suez Canal is about 193 kilometers long, and it makes the journey around 7,000 kilometers shorter!

❶ رحلات طويلة ❷ قارة ❸ قناة السويس

Paragraph (3)

Today, the Suez Canal is used by nearly 19,000 cargo ships a year, so it's a very important sea route for businesses. A lot of today's businesses ❶ are global ❷. This means that they trade with other businesses in countries all over the world. These businesses often use huge ships to export ❸ goods, to sell and move things to other countries. Goods that are exported from Egypt include cotton, rice, and onions. Goods can also be imported ❹ into a country. That is, they are bought from another country. Important goods that are imported into Egypt include some types of metal and paper.

❶ أنشطة تجارية ❷ عالمي - دولي ❸ يصدر ❹ تُستورد

Paragraph (4)

Transportation ❶ and technology ❷ are changing all the time. As well as ships, we now have planes and fast trains to help move goods all around the world. However, it looks like the Suez Canal will be important to us for a long time to come!

❶ النقل ❷ التكنولوجيا

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. The Silk Road was a very important trade route for around 1,300 years. (.......)
2. The Silk Road became less important when people started to transport goods by sea. AB (.......)
3. Ships could travel faster and farther than animals on the road. AB (.......)
4. Ships transport goods by sea. (.......)
5. In the past, the journey by sea from Asia, around Africa to Europe, was short and safe. AB (.......)
6. In 1869, the Suez Canal was opened between the Red Sea and the Atlantic Ocean. AB (.......)
7. The Suez Canal is 2,000 kilometers long. AB (.......)
8. Today, about 19,000 cargo ships use the Suez Canal every year. AB (.......)
9. The Suez Canal is a very important sea route for businesses. (.......)
10. A lot of today's businesses are local. (.......)

11. Egypt exports wool and rice and imports coal and paper. AB (.......)
12. Important goods that are imported into Egypt include some types of metal and paper. (.......)
13. Transportation and technology are not changing all the time. (.......)
14. To export means to sell goods to a different country. (.......)
15. Today, fast trains and planes are also used to transport cargo. (.......)

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. Why did people start to use ships?
▶ ....
2. Were ships faster than animals on the road?
▶ ....
3. What could ships carry?
▶ ....
4. How were the journeys by sea from Asia, around the continent of Africa, to Europe?
▶ ....
5. When was the Suez Canal opened?
▶ ....
6. Why was the Suez Canal opened?
▶ ....
7. What cities did the Suez Canal connect?
▶ ....
8. How long is the Suez Canal?
▶ ....
9. How many cargo ships use the Suez Canal today?
▶ ....
10. What goods does Egypt export?
▶ ....
11. What goods does Egypt import?
▶ ....
12. What means of transport can help move goods all around the world?
▶ ....
13. Is the Silk Road or the Suez Canal more important for trade? Why? SB
▶ ....

14. How has the Suez Canal changed trade and global culture today? AB
▶ ....

15. Do you think the Suez Canal is important to Egypt? Why? SB
▶ ....

Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No	2- Yes	3- Yes	4- Yes	5- No	6- No	7- No	8- Yes	9- Yes
10- No	11- No	12-Yes	13- No	14-Yes	15-Yes			

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. To transport goods by sea.
2. Yes, they were.
3. They could carry more cargo.
4. They were very long, and sometimes dangerous.
5. In 1869.
6. To make a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea.
7. It connected Port Said, on the Mediterranean Sea, with the city of Suez.
8. It is about 193 kilometers long.
9. The Suez Canal is used by nearly 19,000 cargo ships a year.
10. Cotton, rice, and onions.
11. Some types of metal and paper.
12. Planes and fast trains.
13. The Suez Canal. Because ships can travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road.
14. The Suez Canal made a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea. It is a very important sea route for businesses, as a lot of today's businesses are global.
15. Yes. Because it increases the national income.



Fiction Reader

News Team

فريق الأخبار

By

Nicola Gardner

Illustrated By

Matt Ward

Characters الشخصيات


Hatem

He wanted to start a school newspaper. He thought it's important for people to know what's happening around them. Hatem was the editor. He was a good leader and great at writing. Every week, he asked his team for interesting news stories. Now, Hatem is a famous journalist. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo.

أراد حاتم أن يبدأ صحيفة مدرسية، حيث كان يعتقد أنه من المهم أن يعرف الناس ما يحدث حولهم. كان حاتم مُحرر الصحيفة، لكونه قائدًا جيدًا، ومتميزًا في الكتابة. وكل أسبوع، كان حاتم يطلب من فريقه قصصًا إخبارية شيّقة. حاليًا، حاتم صحفي شهير، ويكتب لأكبر صحيفة في القاهرة.


Tarek

He knew a lot about sports, so he was the sports journalist on the team. He helped everybody in school take an interest in sports. Now, Tarek loves television and works as a producer for a sports program.

كان طارق يعرف الكثير عن الرياضة، لذلك كان الصحفي الرياضي في الفريق، وقد ساعد الجميع في المدرسة على الاهتمام بالرياضة. والآن، يحب طارق التليفزيون، ويعمل منتجًا لبرنامج رياضي.


Bassant

She loved science and the environment, so she often went to science fairs. She found out who was doing interesting experiments. Bassant encouraged the young children to recycle the school trash and motivated them to think about how they could help their environment. Now, she works as a science reporter and writes about climate change.

كانت بسنت تحب العلوم والبيئة، ولذلك، كانت تذهب إلى معارض العلوم بشكل منتظم، واكتشفت من كان يقوم بتجارب مثيرة للاهتمام. شجعت بسنت الأطفال الصغار على إعادة تدوير نفايات المدرسة، وحفزتهم على التفكير في كيفية مساعدة بيئتهم. تعمل بسنت الآن كمراسلة علمية، وتكتب عن تغير المناخ.


Nadine

She was really interested in art, so she spent a lot of time in the art studio in school and doing paintings and pottery outside of school. Her mom was an artist and taught her a lot about different ways of painting and making art. Nadine reported on art competitions in school. Now, she is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.

كانت نادين شديدة الاهتمام بالفن، لذلك أمضت الكثير من الوقت في مرسم المدرسة، كما قامت برسم اللوحات ونحت الفخار خارج المدرسة. كانت والدتها فنانة وعلمتها الكثير عن الطرق المختلفة للرسم وصنع الفن. كتبت نادين عن المسابقات الفنية في المدرسة. والآن ، تعمل كمصورة تسافر حول العالم، وتلتقط صورًا للأحداث المهمة.



Mrs Basma

She was an enthusiastic teacher. She helped the children put their news reports on the school website.

كانت بسمة معلمة متحمسة، وساعدت الأطفال في وضع تقاريرهم الإخبارية على موقع المدرسة.



The reporter

She came to school and interviewed the newspaper team.

جائت المراسلة إلي المدرسة وأجرت مقابلة مع فريق الصحيفة.



The PE teacher

He gave Tarek information about sports at school.

أعطى مدرس التربية البدنية معلومات عن الرياضة لطارق.

Picture Dictionary





kitten قطة صغيرة
My cat, Daisy, had two kittens, and they're so cute!



print يَطبع
My aunt helps print the local newspaper on a large machine.



deaf أصم
My cousin is deaf, so she uses sign language.



beach clean-up تنظيف الشاطئ
We organized a beach clean-up at our local beach in the summer. There was a lot of trash there.



enthusiastic متحمس
My mom was very enthusiastic about winning her running race. She put a lot of energy into it!



flyer نشرة إعلانية
I read the flyer about the lost cat. I hope they find him soon!

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

chat	يدردش	primary school	مدرسة ابتدائية
idea	فكرة	grade 6	الصف السادس
produce	يُصْدِر	important	هام
newspaper	جريدة	editor	مُحرِّر
events	أحداث	leader	قائد
check	يفحص - يراجع	wildlife	الحياة البرية
PE teacher	مدرس التربية البدنية	sports journalist	صحفي رياضي
interest	اهتمام	environment	البيئة
experiment	تجربة علمية	science fairs	معارض علمية
encourage	يُشجع	climate change	تغيُّر المناخ
motivate	يُحفز	trash	قمامة
competition	مسابقة - منافسة	artist	فنان
photographer	مُصوِّر صحفي	report	تقرير
enthusiastic	متحمس	community	مجتمع
reporter	مُراسِل صحفي	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
confident	واثق	interview	يُجري مقابلة
producer	منتِج	communicate	يتواصل
article	مقالة	adult	بالغ

Part (1)

Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good friends. They often meet to chat about ❶ their lives, and their work. They also like to chat about their school days together.

They became friends 15 years ago, at primary school. They all went to Young Eagles Primary School. When they were in Grade 6, they had the idea to produce ❷ an English-language newspaper together. In it, they wrote about the latest events ❸ in school, and in the local area.



"Why do you want to start a school newspaper?" Hatem's mom asked him.

"Well, I think it's important for people to know what's happening around them. Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine all agree," he said.

❶ يدردشوا بشأن - يتحدثوا عن ❷ يُصْدِروا ❸ آخر الأحداث

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine became friends at high school. (.......)
2. They became friends 15 years ago. (.......)
3. They had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together when they were in Grade 6. (.......)
4. The students wanted to start a newspaper to become famous. SB (.......)
5. Hatem's mom told him to produce a newspaper for the school. AB (.......)
6. They wrote about the latest events in school only. (.......)

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. Why do Hatem and his friends often meet?
▶ ....
2. When did Hatem and his friends become friends?
▶ ....
3. When did Hatem and his friends decide to produce a school newspaper? AB
▶ ....
4. What language did the team decide to produce their school newspaper in?
▶ ....
5. What did Hatem and his friends write about in the newspaper?
▶ ....
6. Why did Hatem want to start a school newspaper?
▶ ....

Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No	2- Yes	3- Yes	4- No	5- No	6- No

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. To chat about their lives, their work and their school days together.
2. They became friends 15 years ago.
3. In Grade 6.
4. They produced the newspaper in English.
5. They wrote about the latest events in school, and in the local area.
6. He thought it's important for people to know what's happening around them.

Part (2)

Hatem was the editor ❶. He was a good leader, and great at writing. Every week, he asked his team for interesting news stories ❷. His job was to decide which stories should be their main stories ❸. Hatem read everybody's writing, and checked with ❹ the teacher to make sure the English was correct. The team then put the pages together, and printed ❺ the newspaper for the school.

"When's the newspaper coming out ❻?" the younger children asked them every week.

"Tomorrow, don't worry!" the newspaper team said.

❶ مُحَرِّر ❷ تقارير (قصص) إخبارية ❸ التقارير (القصص) الرئيسية
❹ راجَعَ مع ❺ طَبَع ❻ تَصْدُر

Tarek knew a lot about sports, so he was the sports journalist ❶ in the team. He went to the PE teacher ❷ every week, and asked, "What's happening in sports this week, please?" Tarek reported on ❸ the sports games so everybody at school could read about their successes ❹. He also went to the school sports day ❺, and talked to the school's football, volleyball, and basketball teams.

"It's good to have Tarek on the school newspaper," said the PE teacher. "He helps everybody in school take an interest in ❻ sport."

❶ الصحفي الرياضي ❷ مُعَلِّم التربية البدنية ❸ كتب تقريرًا عن
❹ نجاحات - إنجازات ❺ اليوم الرياضي ❻ يهتم بِ

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. Hatem was the editor and he chose the main stories for the newspaper. AB (........)
2. Tarek was a good leader. (........)
3. Every year, Hatem asked his team for interesting news stories. (........)
4. Bassant's job was to decide which stories should be their main stories. (........)
5. Hatem read everybody's writing. (........)
6. Tarek knew a lot about sports. (........)
7. Nadine was the sports journalist in the team. (........)
8. Tarek reported on the school sports day. SB (........)
9. Bassant went to the school sports day. (........)
10. Tarek helps everybody in school take an interest in sport. (........)

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. Who was the editor of the newspaper?
▶ ....
2. What was Hatem's job in the newspaper team?
▶ ....
3. Who gave Tarek information about sports at the school? SB
▶ ....
4. What was Tarek's job in the newspaper team?
▶ ....
5. Who was pleased that Tarek was writing for the school newspaper? AB
▶ ....
6. Why was it good to have Tarek on the school newspaper?
▶ ....

Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes	2- No	3- No	4- No	5- Yes
6- Yes	7- No	8- Yes	9- No	10-Yes

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. Hatem. 2. Deciding which stories should be their main stories.
3. The PE teacher. 4. He was the sports journalist. 5. The PE teacher.
6. Because he helped everybody in school take an interest in sport.

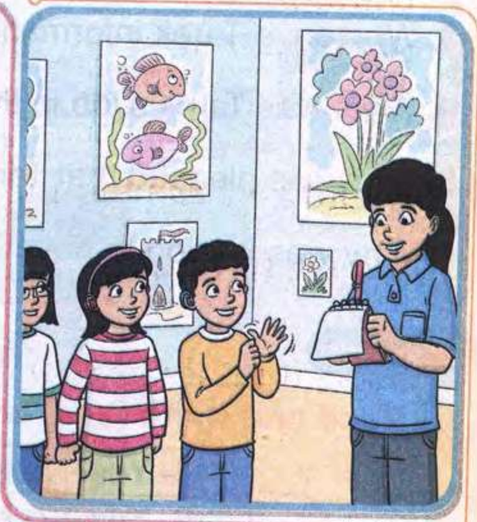
Part (3)



Bassant loved science and the environment, so she often went to science fairs ❶. She found out who was doing interesting experiments ❷. Bassant encouraged ❸ the younger children to recycle ❹ the school trash, and motivated ❺ them to think about how they could help their environment. Once, Bassant went on a school trip with her class to the beach. They looked at the effects of climate change ❻ there. Bassant and the other children also noticed ❼ plastic, and other trash, on the beach.

"This is awful. We need to protect our waters and the wildlife ❽ there," said Bassant. She thought a lot about the trash on the beach. After the trip, she organized ❾ a beach clean-up ❿. It really helped, and the beach was clean again!

❶ معارض العلوم ❷ تجارب ❸ شَجَّعَ ❹ يعيد تدوير ❺ حَفَّزَ - حَثَّ
❻ تغيُّر المناخ ❼ لاحظوا ❽ الحياة البرية ❾ نَظَّمَت ❿ تنظيف



Nadine was really interested ❶ in art, so she spent a lot of time in the art studio ❷ in school, and doing paintings and pottery ❸ outside of school. Her mom was an artist and taught ❹ her a lot about different ways of painting and making art. Nadine reported on art competitions in school. A friend of Nadine's went to the local deaf club ❺, and she invited Nadine to an art exhibition ❻ there. The exhibition was called "Art is for everybody!" and was very popular. Nadine wrote a report all about it for the school newspaper.

Nadine was the newspaper team's photographer ❼, too. Her mom gave her a camera for her eleventh birthday, and showed her how to use it. When there was a news story, Tarek, Hatem, or Bassant called for Nadine, their photographer!

❶ مهتمة بِـ ❷ المَرْسَم (غرفة الرسم) ❸ الخَزَف (تشكيل الفخار)
❹ علَّمَت ❺ نادي الصُّم ❻ معرض فني ❼ مُصوِّر فوتوغرافي

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. Bassant loved science and the environment. (.......)
2. Nadine often went to science fairs. (.......)
3. Bassant found out who was doing interesting experiments. (.......)
4. Bassant encouraged the younger children to think about the environment. AB (.......)
5. Nadine reported on art competitions in school. AB (.......)
6. Bassant went on a school trip with her class to the beach. AB (.......)
7. Nadine wanted to protect their waters and the wildlife. (.......)
8. Bassant organized a beach clean-up. (.......)
9. Nadine was really interested in art. (.......)
10. Bassant spent a lot of time in the art studio in school. (.......)
11. Nadine reported on an art exhibition called "Art is for everybody!" AB (.......)
12. Bassant was doing paintings and pottery outside of school. (.......)
13. Nadine wrote a report all about art competitions for the school newspaper. (.......)
14. Nadine was the newspaper team's photographer. (.......)
15. Nadine's mom gave her a camera for her tenth birthday. (.......)

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. What did Bassant love?
▶ ....
2. Where did Bassant often go?
▶ ....
3. What did Bassant encourage the younger children to do?
▶ ....
4. What did Bassant organize? SB
▶ ....
5. What was Nadine interested in? AB
▶ ....

6. Where did Nadine spend her time?

▶ ....

7. What did Nadine like to do outside of school? SB

▶ ....

8. What did Nadine report on?

▶ ....

9. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody!"? SB

▶ ....

10. What was Nadine's job in the newspaper?

▶ ....

11. What did Nadine's mom give her for her eleventh birthday?

▶ ....

Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes	2- No	3- Yes	4- Yes	5- Yes	6- Yes	7- No	8- Yes	9- Yes
10- No	11-Yes	12-No	13-Yes	14-Yes	15-No			

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. She loved science and the environment.
2. She often went to science fairs.
3. She encouraged them to recycle the school trash and help the environment.
4. She organized a beach clean-up.
5. She was interested in art.
6. In the art studio in school.
7. She did paintings and pottery outside of school.
8. She reported on art competitions in school.
9. At the local deaf club.
10. She was the newspaper team's photographer.
11. She gave her a camera.

Part (4)

The team also helped people in the community. For example, a family who lived near the school was sad because their cat, Kitty, was lost. They couldn't find her and were very worried. The newspaper team made a flyer ❶ about Kitty, with a photo of her, and a contact phone number ❷. They printed it and made copies ❸. After school, the team went to houses in the area and put flyers in front of the doors. Finally, after three days, a local man rang ❹ the newspaper team. He said that he found a cat that matched ❺ Kitty's features ❻.



"I think it's Kitty!" he said. Kitty was found.

"Thank you so much!" the family said to the man, and the team, when they had Kitty back home. "You were a great help!"

❶ منشور - نشرة إعلانية ❷ رقم هاتف للتواصل ❸ نُسَخ ❹ اتّصل على هاتف ❺ تُطابق ❻ مواصفات

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. A family who lived near the school was sad because their cat, Kitty, was lost. (.......)
2. The newspaper team made a flyer about Kitty. (.......)
3. After school, the team went to houses in the area and put flyers behind the doors. (.......)
4. A local man rang the newspaper team after five days. (.......)
5. The team helped to find a lost dog called Reggie. SB (.......)

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. What did the team do?

▶ ....



2. What did the newspaper team make?
▶ ....

3. What did the local man say?
▶ ....

4. What did the local man do when he found Kitty?
▶ ....



Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes	2- Yes	3- No	4- No	5- No

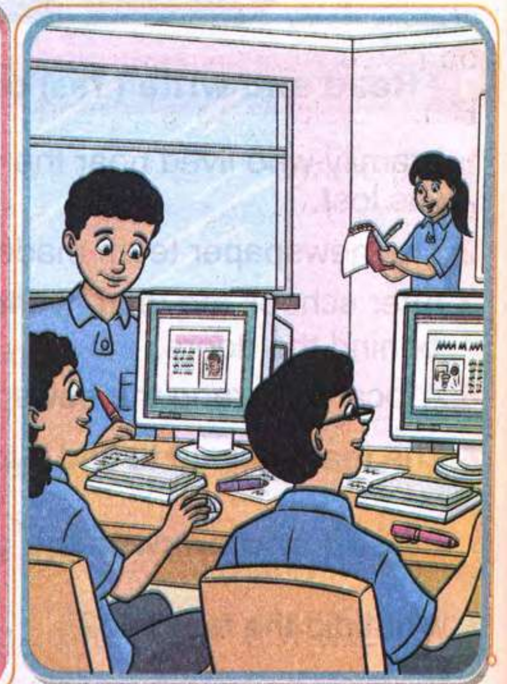
2 Read and answer the questions:

1. The team helped people in the community.
2. A flyer about Kitty, with a photo of her, and a contact phone number.
3. He said that he found a cat that matched Kitty's features.
4. After three days, he rang the newpaper team.

Part (5)

Sometimes, the newspaper team had problems to solve. One week in October, the team were getting the newspaper ready ❶ to print, as usual ❷. They were very excited because they had some great stories. The school volleyball team was in the finals ❸ of the National Volleyball Games, and Tarek was writing a news report ❹ about it. Bassant was writing a report about an important local scientist who came to the school to give a talk ❺. Nadine was writing about a new photography exhibition ❻ in town.

❶ تجهيز الصحيفة(الجريدة) ❷ كالمعتاد ❸ نهائيات ❹ تقرير إخباري
❺ يلقي كلمة(محاضرة) ❻ معرض تصوير فوتوغرافي



That day, the team stayed later ❶ at school to get the newspaper ready and printed. Nadine had all her photos ready, too.

Suddenly, Hatem went to check ❷ the paper for printing.

"Oh no!" he said. "We don't have enough paper!"

"I know! What about Mr Medhat? Can't we ask him for more paper?" said Bassant.

"No, he's away on holiday," said Tarek.



❶ مكث لوقت متأخر ❷ يتفقد

"What shall we do? I'm really worried," said Bassant.

"I know. I'm worried, too," said Tarek.

"I have an idea!" said Nadine. "On social media, people don't always write a lot of words, they use videos to tell stories. Why don't we make videos of our news stories?"

Hatem said, "That's a good idea."

"Let's go and talk to Mrs Basma to see if that's OK," said Nadine.



Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. The team never faced any problems while printing their newspaper. (.......)
2. Tarek was writing a news report about the school volleyball team. (.......)
3. Nadine was writing a report about an important local scientist. (.......)
4. Nadine was writing about a new photography exhibition in town. (.......)

5. The newspaper team had some great stories, but there wasn't any paper. AB (.......)

6. Nadine had the idea to make videos instead of trying to print the stories. (.......)

2 Read and answer the questions:



1. What did the team not have enough of to print the newspaper?
▶ ....
2. What was Bassant doing?
▶ ....
3. What was Nadine doing?
▶ ....
4. Why did the important local scientist come to school?
▶ ....
5. Where was Mr Medhat?
▶ ....
6. Who was worried?
▶ ....
7. What was Nadine's idea to solve the problem?
▶ ....

Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No	2- Yes	3- No	4- Yes	5- Yes	6- Yes

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. They didn't have enough paper!
2. She was writing a report about an important local scientist.
3. Nadine was writing about a new photography exhibition in town.
4. To give a talk.
5. He was away on holiday.
6. Bassant and Tarek.
7. To make videos of the news stories on social media.

Part (6)

Bassant and Nadine found Mrs Basma.

"Excuse me, Mrs Basma, we have a problem with printing our newspaper," said Bassant. "Can we use a phone to film ❶ our stories?"

Mrs Basma was enthusiastic ❷. "I think that's a great idea," she said, "and it will make it easier for the children who find it difficult to read to follow the stories, too."

The girls went back to tell the boys – they were very excited ❸.

❶ يُصَوِّر (فيديو) ❷ متحمِّسة ❸ متحمِّسين

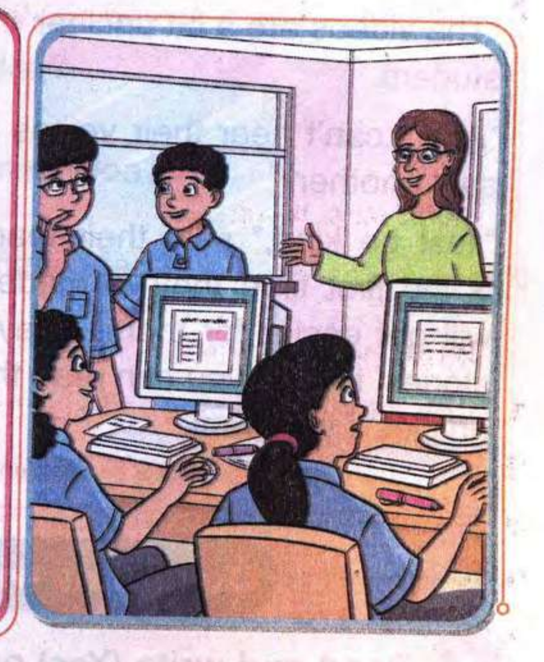


Mrs Basma came to talk to the team. She said, "I've had an idea! Why don't you put your written stories and your videos on the school website ❶, too? Let me know when the videos are ready in the morning, and I'll show you how to do that."

The newspaper team were very happy, but nervous ❷, too. "We don't really know how to make videos," said Tarek.

"Well," said Hatem, "everybody knows this is the first time we're using videos – they will understand."

❶ موقع إلكتروني ❷ متوترين - قَلِقين



In the morning, Mrs Basma helped them to put the articles and the videos on the school website. The younger students came to school and started looking around.

"Hi," they said. "Where is the newspaper, please? We'd like to read that article about our class." They looked a bit worried ❶, but the newspaper team made them feel better.

"Just go to the school website," said Nadine. "All the stories are there."

❶ بدوا قلقين بعض الشيء



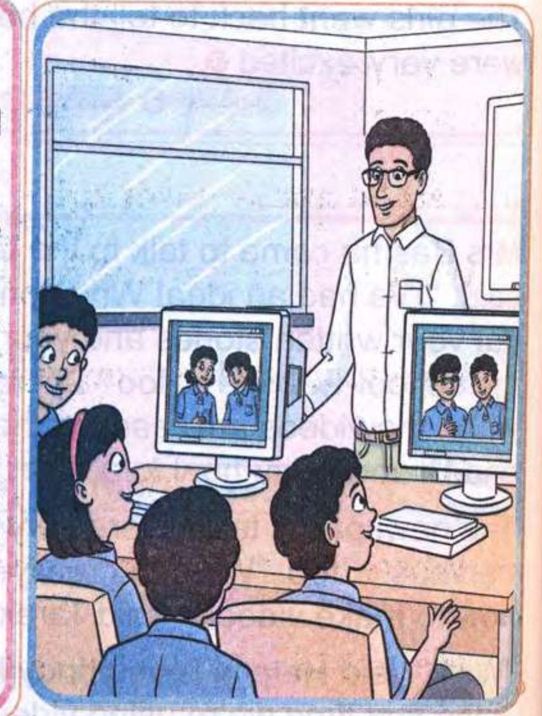
At break time ❶, the younger students went excitedly ❷ to the computer room and turned on the computers. They found the newspaper website quickly.

"The videos are a bit unclear ❸!" said one student.

"And I can't hear their voices very well," said another.

"Just be kind," said their teacher. "This is the first time they've made videos. It will get easier for them. They wrote the stories, too, so you can read the news articles if you want."

❶ وقت الفسحة (الاستراحة) ❷ بحماس ❸ غير واضح



Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. Bassant and Nadine found Mrs Basma. (.......)
2. Bassant and Nadine wanted to use phone to film their stories. (.......)
3. Mrs Basma was enthusiastic. (.......)

4. Filming the stories will make it harder for the children who find it difficult to read. (.......)

5. Mrs Basma was a local news reporter. (.......)

6. The PE teacher helped the team to put the articles and the videos on the school website. (.......)

7. The newspaper team were very happy, but nervous, too. (.......)

8. It was the third time for the team to make videos on social media. (.......)

9. Mrs Basma helped them to put the articles and the videos on the school website. (.......)

10. At break time, the younger students went excitedly to the library and turned on the computers. (.......)

11. The younger students found the newspaper website quickly. (.......)

12. The first time the team made a news report on video, it wasn't perfect. SB (.......)

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. What was the newspaper team's new idea?
▶ ....

2. Who supported the newspaper team's new idea?
▶ ....

3. What was the problem with the team's first video? SB
▶ ....

4. Where was the school newspaper?
▶ ....

5. How did Mrs Basma help the students?
▶ ....

6. When did the younger students go to the computer room?
▶ ....

Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes	2- Yes	3- Yes	4- No	5- No	6- No
7- Yes	8- No	9- Yes	10- No	11-Yes	12-Yes

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. Making videos of their news stories on social media.
2. Mrs. Basma supported the idea.
3. It was a bit unclear!
4. On the school website.
5. She helped them to put the articles and the videos on the school website.
6. At break time.

Part (7)

Later in the year, it did get easier for the newspaper team. They stopped printing the newspaper. They always did the news reports on video, and wrote their articles for the school website. Everybody at the school loved watching their news reports.

The local newspaper in their town heard about what the children were doing. A reporter ❶ came to interview ❷ them.

"This is awesome!" said Hatem. "Now someone is reporting on us, and we're the news!"

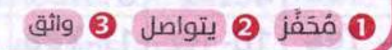
"Yes," said Nadine. "It's very exciting."



❶ مراسل صحفي ❷ يجري مقابلة صحفية

The newspaper team's success was good for the school, too. Many of the younger children became motivated ❶ to create something themselves.

Some children decided to write news reports in English, and others made videos. This helped them all to communicate ❷ better. They became more confident ❸ in writing and speaking in English. Some of them thought about a career in television, or at a newspaper, for when they got older.



❶ مُحَفَّز ❷ يتواصل ❸ واثق



Now, Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are all adults ❶, and they all work in the news.

Hatem is a famous journalist. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo. Tarek loves television, and he now works as a producer ❷ for a sports program ❸. Bassant works as a science reporter and writes about climate change. Nadine is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.

And that shows you how important what we do at school is for our future!



❶ بالغون ❷ مُنتج  ❸ برنامج رياضي

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. The newspaper team's success was bad for the school. (.......)
2. Many of the younger children became motivated to create something themselves. (.......)
3. Some children decided to write news reports in French. (.......)
4. The younger children became more confident in writing and speaking in English. (.......)
5. Some of the younger children thought about a career in television, or at a newspaper, for when they got older. (.......)
6. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are all adults now, and they all work in the news. (.......)
7. The local newspaper in their town heard about what the children were doing. (.......)
8. A doctor came to interview them. (.......)
9. Hatem is a famous footballer. (.......)
10. Hatem writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo. (.......)
11. Tarek loves television, and he now works as a producer for a sports program. (.......)
12. Bassant works as a scientist. (.......)



13. Nadine is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events. (.......)
14. Bassant works as a science reporter and writes about climate change. (.......)
15. Hatem is a famous journalist now. (.......)

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. Who heard about what the children were doing?
▶ ....
2. Who came to interview them?
▶ ....
3. How was the newspaper team's success good for the school?
▶ ....
4. What is Hatem's job now?
▶ ....
5. What is Tarek's job now?
▶ ....
6. What does Bassant do?
▶ ....
7. What does Nadine do?
▶ ....

Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No	2- Yes	3- No	4- Yes	5- Yes	6- Yes	7- Yes	8- No	9- No
10-Yes	11-Yes	12-No	13-Yes	14-Yes	15-Yes			

2 Read and answer the questions:

1. The local newspaper in their town.
2. A reporter came to interview them.
3. They became motivated to create something themselves.
4. Hatem is a famous journalist. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo.
5. He works as a producer for a sports program.
6. She works as a science reporter and writes about climate change.
7. Nadine is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.



Listening Scripts



Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I decided to travel around the world and see many countries. My mom said "yes"! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair, so we had to be very organized, but that wasn't a problem. I looked up the best places to visit on the internet before we left.



Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep and chickens. Amina grew fava beans so she could make delicious ful mudamas. Monir and Menna had some bees, so they could have honey.



Junko Tabei was a famous and brave adventurer who did every challenge she could. She loved climbing mountains, and she was the first woman to climb Mount Everest. She was born in 1939. She trained hard on the mountains from the age of ten. In 1975, she finally reached the top of Mount Everest. She broke the record for being the first woman to get to the top of Everest for some time.



Drinking dirty water can cause disease because dirty water has a lot of bacteria in it. To prevent yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water. Store fresh food in a refrigerator or a cool, dry place in your kitchen. The food will stay fresh, and it won't start to decompose.



Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes turns to speak, and takes time to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an interest in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.



Hi, I'm Shady, and this is my goals journal. I'm excited about this month. I have planned lots of things I want to do. I'm anxious about my history and math tests at the end of the month. The tests are going to be more difficult than last month, but I'm determined to do well. There's a charity sale at school in two weeks, and I want to take part. Books, cakes, and toys will be sold to raise money for charity. I'm taking my old toys.





Second Term

Units Revision
Revision Tests
Answer Key
Listening Scripts

Contents

Part 1

Unit 5 Revision

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

compass - winds - Astronomy - reliable - navigator

Ibn Majid was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and astronomy. ① .... was important because the stars at night helped sailors to find their way. Ibn Majid's studies helped him understand the ② ...., the monsoons, and the stars in the sky. As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master ③ .... He used a ④ ...., but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

picked - woke - took - dropped - travel

Hi! My name's Lucy. I decided to ① .... around the world and see as many countries as possible. I decided to go to Morocco first. My favorite place in Morocco was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We stayed at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom ② .... me up early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I ③ .... up a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi ④ .... us off at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

athlete - remove - crutch - break - along

Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a world-record-holding ① .... He shows that when you work hard, you can achieve amazing things. At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. But one day, he was traveling ② .... the road on his motorbike when he had an accident. The doctors told him that they had to remove part of his leg. Omar had to learn to use a ③ .... and then a wheelchair. Omar learned about two important athletes who are also disabled and have achieved amazing achievements. This inspired him, and he began to think positively and to train hard to ④ .... a world record.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sailed - across - walked - inspired - ski

Matthieu Tordeur is a world-record-holding explorer. At the age of 27 years and 40 days, he became the youngest person to ① .... to the South Pole in Antarctica, alone and without any help. Matthieu was born in Rouen, France, on December 4, 1991. As a young man, Matthieu was ② .... by famous explorers like Ranulph Fiennes, Ben Saunders, and Jean-Louis Étienne. After finishing his education, Matthieu went on many journeys across deserts, mountains, and snow. He cycled ③ .... Europe and China, and he ④ .... across the Atlantic Ocean. Then he decided to ski to the South Pole.



5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

astronauts - gravity - spaceship - clean - wipes

On the spaceship, it's important to keep everything ① .... The team can't use cleaning liquids for cleaning as there's less ② ...., so they use cleaning wipes. There's no shower or bath in the ③ ...., so astronauts wash themselves with cleaning wipes, too. The ④ .... sometimes wear the same clothes for a long time in the spaceship. Often, dirty clothes are then thrown away.

6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

away - frightening - shadow - reef - shape

One day, Little Fish was swimming with her friends in the wide, blue sea. They were playing games in the coral ① .... and having fun. They could see their families, who weren't far ② .... Later that day, while they were playing, they saw a dark ③ .... moving towards them. It was early afternoon, but suddenly the sea looked dark and ④ .... The shadow was the shape of a huge shark with a big mouth and a long, strong tail.

7 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

challenge - diving - set - wheelchair - motorbike

Ashraf : Hi, Hadi. Do you know the story of Faisal Al-Mosawi?

Hadi : Hi, Ashraf. No, I don't. What is his story?

Ashraf : In 2005, Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player. However, after a car accident, he couldn't walk, and he had to use a ① .... He was 20 years old then.

Hadi : What happened after that?

Ashraf : Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a ② .... So, in 2009, he learned scuba ③ ...., and he decided to become the fastest diver in the world.

Hadi : Wow! What an inspiring person! Did he succeed?

Ashraf : Yes. In 2018, he broke the world record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes. He broke a record that was ④ .... in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability.

Hadi : What an amazing story! Thanks, Ashraf

8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. the - seaman - Ibn Majid - was - Arab - first.

▶ ....

2. write - books - many - did - How - Ibn Majid?

▶ ....?

3. on - in Spain - went - trip - I - a walking.

▶ ....

4. language - did - pick - you - What - up?

▶ ....?

5. phrases - You'll - up - some - American - pick.

▶ ....

6. world - Which - did - records - break - Omar Hegazy?

▶ ....?

7. is - interesting - a - very - man - Omar Hegazy.

▶ ....

8. He - job - a banker - had - as - a good.

▶ ....

9. you - off - the airport - at - Who - saw?

▶ .... ?

10. hours - He - the swim - completed - in - eight!

▶ .... !

11. travelers - did - he - How - sea - help?

▶ .... ?

12. gives - Ehab - others - talks - to - inspire.

▶ ....

13. football - Faisal Al-Mosawi - talented - player - was - a.

▶ ....

14. an astronaut - Would - to - you - be - like?

▶ .... ?

15. Astronauts - physically - to - be - strong - need.

▶ ....

16. astronauts - do - How - in space - keep - fit?

▶ .... ?

17. sleeping bags - attached - are - to - Their - a wall.

▶ ....

18. were - What - the - challenges - the trip - of?

▶ .... ?

19. doctors - for their - fitness - Astronauts - are tested - by.

▶ ....

20. is - the - cleaned - spaceship - How?

▶ .... ?

9 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. A (fisherman - navigator - swimmer) is a person who can find their way at sea.
2. (Astronomy - Navigating - Exploring) is the study of everything in space - the planets and the stars.
3. The people who work on a ship or boat are (astronauts - pilots - sailors).
4. The (countryside - coast - peninsula) is a piece of land with the sea all around it, except for one side.
5. He is (worried - fascinated - afraid) by the sea. He loves it so much.
6. Navigate means finding your way at (sea - countryside - peninsula).
7. To (navigate - fascinate - explore) means to try to find out things, and ask questions, even when we already have everything we need.
8. Ali is very (lazy - intelligent - weak). He always gets high marks in exams.
9. (Fins - Crutches - Sticks) are long rubber things to put on your feet to help you swim faster.
10. A crutch is something to put under your arm to help you (swim - walk - sleep) better.
11. Our teacher always (orders - disappoints - inspires) us. He motivates and guides us.
12. My friends and I tried to (hold - take - catch) our breath underwater for as long as we could as a competition.
13. He is a (bad - talented - terrible) football player. He is very good.
14. Astronauts are taught how to fix a spaceship and how to (do - have - has) experiments.
15. The students are shown how to (do - have - give) first aid.
16. Jana always organizes her books and pens on her desk. She is very (tidy - messy - untidy).
17. Hossam is very (sleepy - ambitious - messy). He dreams of being an astronaut.
18. He (cycled - shipped - sailed) across the Atlantic Ocean.

19. Sara and Huda were (shouting - chatting - realizing) while having a walk. They discussed a lot of things together.
20. She (whispered - shouted - screamed) to her friend so that no one could hear her.
21. He (broke - removed - hit) a world record two years ago.
22. Every one of us should (motivate - follow - inspire) his dreams.

GRAMMAR REVISION

10 Choose the correct answer: (Phrasal Verbs)

1. I don't enjoy (seeing off - filling in) forms. AB
2. Hesham (looked up - put away) the information on the internet. AB
3. Sometimes the traffic (wakes me up - picks it up) in the morning. AB
4. We (figured out - dropped off) Mr Bashir at the train station. AB
5. I (put away - woke up) my clothes and tidied my room this morning. AB
6. Sherif (picked up - filled in) some Spanish when he visited Spain last month. AB
7. Laila quickly (dropped off - figured out) how to use her new compass. AB
8. We're going to (see off - look up) our grandparents at the airport tomorrow. AB
9. My uncle filled (in - at - on) a form when he was applying for a job.
10. After we finished our vacation in the countryside, my uncle dropped us (in - off - of) at the train station.
11. He figured the answer (on - out - in) on his own.
12. My friend, Adel, saw me (off - of - up) at the airport when I was traveling to Tunisia.
13. My dad woke me (on - out - up) early to pray on time.
14. I put my hiking shoes (away - way - ways) after I returned home.
15. We looked (at - up - of) the road to the restaurant on the internet before we left.

16. We (figured - looked - filled) out lots of new information in the science lesson.
17. She (puts - picks - wakes) lots of new things when she helps her mom in the kitchen.
18. Mom always tells me to (put - drop - see) away my books after finishing my homework.

11 Choose the correct answer: (Present Simple Passive)

1. A new player is (teaching - teach - taught) many things by the coach.
2. Astronauts are (tested - testing - test) by doctors for their fitness.
3. Astronauts' sleeping bags are (attaching - attached - attach) to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep.
4. If you pass the tests, then you are (chose - chosen - choose) for the next mission.
5. The chef is (teaching - taught - teach) the new cooks how to cook new meals.
6. (Are - Does - Is) your suitcase packed for the trip?
7. The house (is cleaning - is cleaned - cleans) every day.
8. The report is (write - wrote - written) by the team leader.
9. The car is (fixing - fix - fixed) regularly by the mechanic.
10. This delicious cake (is baked - is baking - baked) by my grandma.
11. The movie tickets (is sold - are selling - are sold) online.
12. A newspaper delivery boy (delivers - delivering - is delivered) the newspaper early in the morning.
13. The newspaper is (deliver - delivering - delivered) early in the morning.
14. The room is (cleaned - cleans - cleaning) by the hotel staff.
15. The hotel staff (is cleaned - cleans - cleaning) the room.
16. The photographer (take - is taken - takes) the photos.
17. The photos (are taking - are taken - takes) by the photographer.
18. (Do - Are - Is) the paintings shown in the art gallery?
19. Is the report (review - reviewing - reviewed) by the editor?
20. (Is - Are - Does) the concert arranged well?

Total
30

Unit 5 Test 1

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. In 2009, Faisal Al-Mosawi learned scuba (swimming - diving - sailing - driving).
2. He broke the world (record - mark - standard - chart) and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes.
3. He broke a record that was (left - built - sit - set) in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability.
4. Faisal continues to scuba dive, and he (carries - trains - inspires - moves) young people by giving talks.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

Navigate - fascinated - sailors - travel - seaman

Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid? He is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. Ibn Majid was the first Arab ① ……………………, and he learned how to navigate the seas. ② …………………… means to find your way around. Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child, he was ③ …………………… by the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great ④ …………………… .

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Ibn Battuta was a famous Arab explorer who wrote a book about his travels. He was born in 1304 in Tangier in Morocco. He made his first journey when he was 21 years old, when he set off on a pilgrimage to Makkah. At first, he hated travelling because he was lonely. However, during the next 28 years, he travelled over 120,000 kilometres.

Term 2

Ibn Battuta stayed in Makkah for three years. After Makkah, he travelled through Turkey, Russsia and India, where he worked for a king for seven years. In 1342, the king sent him to the most powerful king in the world, the king of China, but his boat sank while it was sailing through a storm. However, Ibn Battuta survived and in 1344, he reached China and traveled to the capital city, Beijing. He spent several years in China before he traveled home, passing through Damascus, Cairo and Spain.

During the last few years of his life, he wrote a book about his travels called "Travels in Asia and Africa". Ibn Battuta died in 1368.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The undelined word "set off" means (stayed - traveled - walked - ran).
2. Ibn Battuta made his first journey in (1325 - 1342 - 1344 - 1304).
3. The passage mentioned (five – six – seven – eight) countries.

B Answer these questions:

4. Why did Ibn Battuta, at first, hate travelling? ▶ ....
5. How long did Ibn Battuta live? ▶ ....

The Reader - The Silk Road

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Silk was only made in China at first. (   )
2. The Silk Road was important only for buying and selling goods. (   )
3. Constantinople is now known as China. (   )
4. Many towns along the routes became rich. (   )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Where did the Silk Road start?
▶ ....
6. What goods did people from Europe sell?
▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. The plants are (watered - watering - water - waters) twice a week by the farmer.
2. Ali looked (out - at - up - in) on the internet to know the best historical places to visit in Morocco.
3. Are the books (returning - returned - return - returns) to the library on time?
4. I picked (in - up - on - out) a lot of English phrases while I was in Canada on vacation.
5. When the winter ends, my mom puts the winter clothes (out - on - of - away).
6. The difficult questions are (answering - answer - answered - were answered) by the teacher.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. a book - Matthieu - about - adventures - wrote - his. ▶ ....
2. ran away - When - they - deer - got closer, - the. ▶ ....
3. wanted - Ibn Majid - the seas - to - and oceans - explore. ▶ ....

7 Write an email an email of (70) words to your friend Basim: (5Ms)

Tell him about a visit you made to a famous place. Tell him when you went, what did you take with you and what did you do and see there. Your email address is hosam@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is basim@school.net.

....
....
....
....
....

Term 2

Unit 6 Revision

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

proud - director - sports - fantastic - prizes

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. Luckily, the weather was great for our sports day. The school ① ...., Mrs Dorriya, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave out ② .... She said, "I'm so ③ .... of all of you – you worked so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a fun tug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home tired, but happy. Our ④ .... day was amazing!

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

calculations - Grades - articles - do - have

I'm Hassan. My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in ① .... 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or ② .... math. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do ③ .... The children also love our school newspaper because there are ④ .... about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too!

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

get - singer - journalist - press - meetings

My name is Waleed Bashir and I'm a sports ① .... I love my job because I love sport! Every morning, I go to the newspaper office and I have ② .... with my editor and other journalists. Then we decide which games I need to watch. If it's a football game, I arrive about three hours before the game starts. Journalists from television, radio, and newspapers sit together in a place that's called the ③ .... box. We all chat while we ④ .... ready. During the game, I make a lot of notes.



4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

presenters - breaking - editor - journalists - reports

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist. I love my job. It's fun, and every day is different because we don't know what news will come in. There are many kinds of ① .... I'm a news journalist, so I write the ② .... news - that is, the news as it starts to happen. I write my news ③ .... from home, but I can get anywhere in the city if there's a story there. All the news stories are sent to the ④ .... by midday. In the afternoon, I start researching stories, interviewing people, and preparing for the next day.

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

investigate - cleaned - cleans - got - protect

Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin at their home. Last year, when she visited them, things were different. When Nadine ① .... to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too. She wanted to do something to ② .... the river, so she took her uncle to see it. He asked her to write some notes and take some photos. Then he gave her notes to a reporter and sent him to ③ .... the problem. At the end, the problem was solved, and the river will be ④ .... up and the fish will be healthy again.

6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

decorated - sell - instruments - choir - sold

Our school concert was on Saturday. It was amazing! Miss Laila's class put 150 chairs in the school hall, and tickets were ① .... on the school website. Mr Amir's class ② .... the hall with flowers. Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical ③ ...., including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The ④ .... has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music!

7 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: Student's Book

awesome - challenges - luck - skills - Well done

A : Mom, I got an A in my test!
B : Wow! ① .... ! That's ② ....
A : What ③ .... did you learn on your trip?
B : I learned how to cook on a camping stove, and how to take better photos.
A : I didn't pass my driving test. I was really nervous.
B : Oh well, you're a great driver. Better ④ .... next time!
A : What were the ⑤ .... of the trip?
B : Well, I really missed my family. And it rained a lot – that was bad!

8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. a printing - on - made - press - are - Newspapers.
▶ ....
2. at our school - Every year, - sale - have - a garage - we.
▶ ....
3. a small - a hutch - He - house - called - lives in.
▶ ....
4. raise - Does - your class - money for - like to - local charities?
▶ .... ?
5. are tracked - don't - They - so - they - get lost.
▶ ....
6. Is - safe enough - the - designed - to be - area?
▶ .... ?
7. all - watched - cheetahs - the time - aren't - The.
▶ ....

8. a - Who - doesn't - giant - love - panda?

▶ .... ?

9. visiting - I'm - my - grandparents - weekend - that.

▶ ....

10. As you - very exciting - is - see, - my job - can.

▶ ....

11. my - love sport - I love - job - I - because!

▶ .... !

12. posted - by you - Were - the videos - of - any?

▶ .... ?

13. won't - I - to come - be - No, - able.

▶ ....

14. near - a peaceful - was - place - It - a river.

▶ ....

15. I'm - so - of - proud - you - all of.

▶ ....

9 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. A/An (editor - volunteer - teacher) is someone who works for free.
2. (Equipment - Hutch - Craft) is a set of tools or things you need to do something.
3. The (book - novel - newspaper) is a printed paper that gives you news.
4. The person who chooses the news stories is the (editor - volunteer - journalist).
5. The (flat - hole - hutch) is a small house for a rabbit.
6. Being (careless - responsible - irresponsible) means being someone others can rely on.

7. A/An (vaccination - equipment - care) is a medicine that protects a person or animal from a disease.
8. (Local - National - International) means related to more than one country.
9. (News stories - Breaking news - News reports) is new information about an event that is happening now.
10. The study, or job, of writing articles for newspapers and magazines is called (journalism - newspaper - journalist).
11. When you are describing a person who likes talking to and being with other people, you call him (lonely - intelligent - sociable).
12. The (company - staff - friends) are the people who work at a place, for example, a hotel.
13. To (investigate - promise - pollute) is to find out the facts about something.
14. To (save - change - promise) is to say that something will be done.
15. A (house - barn - boat) is a building on a farm for animals to sleep in.
16. The time in the year when the leaves fall from the trees is the (fall - summer - winter).
17. The (fall - summer - winter) is the hottest season of the year.
18. He (grows - keeps - walks) the sheep in the barn.

GRAMMAR REVISION

10 Choose the correct answer:

1. Those letters (write - is written - are written) by my sister.
2. The trip will be (organizing - organized - organize) by a travel company.
3. He is (washed - washing - wash) the car right now.
4. The car is (washed - washing - wash) right now.
5. Who was the message (send - sent - sending) to?



6. The painting is (like - liking - liked) by many visitors.
7. The meal (is prepared - was prepared - prepares) by the chef an hour ago.
8. The chef (were prepared - prepared - was preparing) the meal an hour ago.
9. The movie will (watched - watch - be watched) by millions of people.
10. The messages (is sent - were sent - send) yesterday.
11. The picture was (painted - is painted - will be painted) by the artist.
12. The classroom (is decorated - was decorated - will be decorated) by the students tomorrow.
13. The giant pandas (was put - are put - were put) in danger some years ago.
14. (Were - Was - Is) any of the videos posted by you?
15. Much of their habitat (were destroyed - was destroying - was destroyed) to build new homes.
16. The house was (built - build - builds) many years ago.
17. The house (will be sold - was sold - is sold) last month.
18. The problems were (solve - solved - solving) by the expert.
19. The homework wasn't (finishing - finish - finished) on time.
20. When (was - were - is) the tickets bought?
21. How was the problem (solved - solving - solve)?
22. The new bridge (will be built - will build - will be build) by the end of 2025.
23. The report will not be (finishing - finished - finish) early.
24. (Does - Is - Will) the package be delivered tomorrow?
25. The message will be (sent - send - sending) as soon as possible.
26. The dishes will (washed - wash - be washed) after lunch.
27. My (brother's - brothers - brother) car is blue.
28. The (teacher - teacher's - teachers) instructions were clear.
29. My (sister's - sisters - sister) birthday is next week.
30. The (student's - students - student) backpack is on the floor.

Unit 6 Test 2



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. Cheetahs lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly (appeared - disappeared - showed up - revealed).
2. Eight cheetahs were (provided - presented - introduced - brought) to a big park in India, Kuno National Park.
3. The Indian people are very (pleased - sad - unhappy - displeased) to have these animals back in their country.
4. Cheetahs aren't watched all the time, but they are (left - untracked - tracked - unnoticed), so they don't get lost.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

party - bad - invite - fantastic - pity

Farah : Hi, Jana. I've got some great news. My parents have agreed to let me have a party for my birthday!

Jana : Oh, wow! That's ① .... news. When's your birthday?

Farah : My birthday's next month. I can ② .... all my friends.

Jana : That's great! I'm so pleased for you. What date is it?

Farah : It's on Saturday, September 16th. Can you come?

Jana : No, I won't be able to come. That's a ③ .... I'm visiting my grandparents that weekend.

Farah : Oh, no! That's too ④ .... Let's do something together the weekend before.

Jana : That's a good idea.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Life in the future will be different from present-day life. The people of the future will probably build cities in space. These cities will be large and thousands of people will live and work there. It will be a fantastic way of life, but there will be many problems and dangers. One of the biggest problems will be oxygen. People need oxygen to breathe, but there is no air in space. That is why future space cities will need their own oxygen supply. To solve this problem, oxygen could be sent to space cities from Earth. But this would be difficult and very expensive. There is another solution. Trees and plants provide us with the oxygen we breathe on Earth. They are cheap to grow and easy to transport from one place to another. So, people could use them to get oxygen in space.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Cities in space will need oxygen supply because (there's no trees or plants - there is no air - there are too many people - there is fresh air).
2. (People - Plants - Animals - Birds) provide oxygen on Earth.
3. The underlined word "there" refers to the (Earth - space cities - trees - moon).

B Answer these questions:

4. Where will the future cities probably be built? ▶ ....
5. What kind of life will it be? ▶ ....

The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine became friends at high school. ( )
2. Hatem was the sports journalist. ( )
3. They had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together when they were in Grade 6. ( )

4. Nadine's friend invited her to an art exhibition. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Who was a good leader? ▶ ....
6. What did Nadine like to do outside of school? ▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. (Were - Does - Is) the area designed to be safe enough for the pandas?
2. The book (were written - was written - was writing) by a famous author.
3. The tickets (will - are - were) be sold out quickly, so get them soon!
4. The cake (is eating - is eaten - are eaten) by the children at the party.
5. Where was the meeting (finished - finish - be finished)?
6. (Alis' - Ali's - Ali - Alis) bicycle is red and shiny.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. animals - are - in the - Cheetahs - the fastest - world.

▶ ....

2. in the past - travelers - use - did - Why - camels?

▶ .... ?

3. the - habitats - People - of pandas - didn't - protect.

▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A sports day at your school"

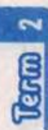
Ideas to help you: **planned - took part - football - volleyball - basketball - running - jump**

....

....

....





Unit 7 Revision

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

paths - safe - invention - encourage - lights

A large town is trying to be more environmentally-friendly. To ① .... more people to cycle instead of drive cars, it wants to build roads that are ② .... and have good lighting. Bikes don't have strong lights, like cars, so the ③ .... of glow-in-the-dark bike ④ .... would be great for that town. It would help the bikes a lot.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

bacteria - filter - problems - prevented - diseases

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves ① .... caused by dirty water. A ② .... straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The ③ .... can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have ④ .... diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

loop - birdseed - gatepost - birdfeeders - knot

One morning, Rania was in her yard. She could hear her neighbor, Mr Hamdy. Every morning, he went outside and filled his ① .... Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds. He loved feeding the birds, but he hurt his leg. Rania decided to help Mr Hamdy. She put a rope around the ② ...., and tied a ③ .... to make one big loop. She gave him some ④ .... to feed the birds. She showed him where to pull on the rope to make the birdfeeders move.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

mint - better - toothpaste - teeth - good

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean ① .... were important to them, so they invented a type of ② .... They mixed salt, flowers, ③ ...., and pepper into a paste. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as ④ .... as modern toothpaste!

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

solar - fit - environment - Cyclists - paths

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel; it keeps you ① ...., and it's good for the ② .... In some countries, people are using a new material for bike ③ .... which glows in the dark. These paths are called "glow-in-the-dark bike paths". These paths store solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the paths glow softly. ④ .... can see where they are going in the dark. These paths are safe, and they're good for the environment!

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

Ancient - magazines - Egypt - competition - machine

Ms Samira : If you join a science ① ...., what would you invent and why?

Nagwa : Can I look online for ideas?

Ms Samira : Yes, you can. You can look in ② ...., too!

Reem : Well, if I entered a science competition, I'd design a time ③ .... I'd love to travel to a different time in history.

Nagwa : That's a great idea. If you designed a time machine, where would you go?

Lara : Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.

Reem : If I went in a time machine, I'd go to ④ .... Egypt!
I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. help - him - Wael - to - teacher - asked - his. AB
▶ ....

2. read - told - page 48 - Mrs Hala - him - to. AB
▶ ....

3. put - Mom - bike - his - away - told - to - Tarek. AB
▶ ....

4. the - me - door - asked - to - Hani - close. AB
▶ ....

5. countries - Filter straws - in many - diseases - have prevented.
▶ ....

6. the pyramids - I'd like - built - they - to learn - how.
▶ ....

7. is - the - about - interactive - What - exhibition?
▶ .... ?

8. a time - what - would - I wonder - machine - look like.
▶ ....

9. does - type of - What - the camera - fish - like - look?
▶ .... ?

10. Mazen - does - go - decide - Where - to?
▶ .... ?

11. a driver - them - don't need - to control - Driverless - cars.
▶ ....

12. many - Ancient Egyptian - still use - inventions - We - today.
▶ ....

13. is - project - What - the - about - school?

▶ ....?

14. They've - for - existed - thousands - years - of.

▶ ....

15. worked - how - understood - They - body - the human.

▶ ....

16. used - A plow - and turn - was - the soil - to dig.

▶ ....

17. to help - them - animals - Egyptians - used - The Ancient.

▶ ....

18. help him - Mr Hamdy - using - What is - walk - to?

▶ .... ?

8 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. The (edit - edible - audio) cutlery is something that you can eat.
2. The (filter - filler - failure) straw can stop people getting sick.
3. To (decompose - compose - gather) means to break into small parts.
4. To (prevent - happen - occur) means to stop something from happening.
5. Plastic doesn't (melt - decompose - compose), so it stays in the ground for a long time.
6. Filter straws solve problems caused by (clean - pure - dirty) water.
7. People are using a new material for bike paths which (stores - loses - gives) solar energy during the day.
8. A (careless - driverless - painless) object is something without a driver.
9. (Interactive - Automatic - Programmed) means something you can touch and move.
10. The planetarium is a place where you can see stars and (plants - planets - fish).
11. To control means to (follow - observe - direct) something or somebody.

12. Ancient Egyptians (mixed - threw - took) salt with other things to make a type of toothpaste.
13. Ancient Egyptians used herbs to stop (paint - plane - pain) and diseases.
14. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, mint, and pepper to make a (toothache - toothless - toothpaste).
15. (Water - Plastic - Plants) can have a very bad effect on sea life.
16. A (creative - boring - realistic) person is someone who uses their imagination to produce new ideas.
17. Vegetables are a/an (unhealthy - not healthy - healthy) food that can be grown in the garden.
18. To (uncover - cover - control) means to place or put something over an object for protection.

GRAMMAR REVISION

9 Choose the correct answer: (The "If" Conditional)

1. If we (go - went) to Aswan, (we'd visit - we visit) the Temple of Philae. AB
2. What (would - do) you invent if you (are - were) a scientist? AB
3. They (wouldn't - don't) need a driver if (they'd have - they had) a driverless car. AB
4. If (we'd stopped - we stopped) buying plastic, we (wouldn't - don't) make so much plastic pollution. AB
5. I (learn - would learn) the guitar if I (could learn - learn) any musical instrument. AB
6. Where (did - would) you go if you (can - could) go anywhere? AB
7. If I had more money, I (must - would - can) travel all over the world.
8. If I (live - living - lived) in Paris, I would speak French fluently.
9. If she studied harder, she (would - must - may) pass her exams easily.
10. What would you do if you (finding - find - found) a lost dog?

Term 2

11. If I were you, I (can't - wouldn't - mustn't) take that job.
12. He would get better marks if he (attended - attends - attend) all his classes.
13. If I (hasn't - haven't - didn't) eat so much, I wouldn't feel sick now.
14. He (must - would - can) be happier if he didn't lose his job.
15. If they had a car, they (could - must - can) visit us more often.
16. Adham (can't - won't - wouldn't) need an umbrella if it didn't rain.
17. (Can - Would - Will) you go out if it were sunny tomorrow?
18. I would help you more if you (asked - ask - asking) me nicely.
19. If I had wings, I (can - will - could) fly over the mountains.
20. We could finish the project on time if everyone (help - helped - helps).
21. She said she (would - will - must) give me a call if she found my phone.

10 Choose the correct answer: (as adjective as)

1. She is (like - as - to) tall as her brother.
2. Their house is as beautiful (as - is - like) the one in the picture.
3. His new phone isn't as (faster - fastest - fast) as his old one.
4. The movie was just (as funny as - as funny - funny) I expected.
5. They are not as (experience - experiences - experienced) as the other team.
6. He (is - isn't - as) as old as his father.
7. The cake is (delicious - as delicious as - as delicious) I expected.
8. My sister is as intelligent (like - is - as) a genius.
9. The mountain is as (high - higher - highest) as the clouds.
10. The cat is as (cutest - the cutest - cute) as a baby.



Unit 7 Test 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. We all know that (swimming - cycling - walking - jumping) is a good way to travel.
2. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which (fades - hides - darkens - glows) in the dark.
3. These paths store (solar - chemical - electrical - kinetic) energy during the day.
4. These paths enable (drivers - sailors - cyclists - pilots) to see where they are going in the dark.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

greenhouse - tiles - fuels - fossil - climate

Many countries still make electricity using ① .... fuels like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other ② .... gases, which are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases cause ③ .... change and air pollution. A company has created special floor ④ .... that create energy when people walk on them. The energy is turned into electricity and stored.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Hi! I'm Amir. I recently read an article about pollution and its impact on the environment, and it got me thinking about how important it is for us to take action. Pollution is extremely harmful to our planet. It makes the air smell bad and makes it hard to breathe. The water gets polluted too, and it's bad for fish and other animals. Pollution represents a significant

threat to our planet, harming habitats, wildlife, and even our own health. But we can make a difference! Simple steps like reducing waste, recycling, and using eco-friendly products can help reduce pollution. We should plant more trees to help stop pollution and keep the Earth clean. Let's spread awareness and encourage others to join us in protecting our environment. Together, we can create a cleaner and healthier world!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Pollution is extremely (helpful - useful - harmful - careful) to our planet.
2. It makes the air smell bad and makes it hard to (breathe - eat - read - write).
3. The opposite of the underlined word "harmful" is (useful - dangerous - unsafe - stressful).

B Answer these questions:

4. What does pollution represent? ▶ ....
5. What can help reduce pollution? ▶ ....

The Reader - Transportation Today

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. The Silk Road became less important when people started to transport goods by sea. ( )
2. In the past, the journey by sea from Asia, around Africa to Europe, was short and safe. ( )
3. The Suez Canal is 2,000 kilometers long. ( )
4. Today, about 19,000 cargo ships use the Suez Canal every year. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Why did people start to use ships?
▶ ....
6. What goods does Egypt export?
▶ ....



5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. You (wouldn't - mustn't - won't - will) get lost so easily if you used a map.
2. What (will - would - must - is) happen if the Earth's temperature increased?
3. The movie was as (exciting - more exciting - less exciting - the most exciting) as I had heard.
4. They could win the competition if they (practiced - practice - practicing - would practice) more.
5. He is (such - as - like - more) brave as a lion.
6. If humans (lived - are living - live - will live) on Mars, what kind of challenges would they face?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. an early - The Ancient Egyptians - created - ink - type of.

▶ ....

2. been - inside - you - a planetarium - Have - ever?

▶ .... ?

3. animals - trapped - Some - get - the - plastic - in.

▶ ....

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Adel: (5Ms)

Tell him about a book you read about the Ancient Egyptians. Tell him how they were creative and what they invented. Your email address is ahmad@gmail.com and your friend's email address is adel@school.net.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 8 Revision

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

activities - take - independent - part - team

Have you ever been part of a ① ....? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in ② .... out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be ③ .... and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to ④ .... part. You might learn a lot!

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

check - flight - planned - ideas - notes

Fares had to do a project on the history of ① .... He had to make a poster, but he couldn't get it right. His friend told him to ask for help. His friend said it was good to ② .... His teacher told him to try again, to make ③ .... on what he read and to look in books for more ideas. His mom asked him to try his best and to have a break when he's tired. His dad told him to stop and think and to take time to plan. So Fares asked, he read, and he tried. He ④ .... his ideas, and his poster was the best!

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

leader - oasis - meeting - determined - Scouts

Everybody met at school, and the Scouts and their teacher traveled by bus to the other side of the ① .... The teacher said they would walk in groups to the meeting place. The ② .... were put into groups, and each group had a ③ .... The group leaders were older. There was a prize for the team who got to the meeting place first, and Seleem was ④ .... to win.



4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

National - environment - taking - career - collage

I go to an art club after school. I'm ① .... part in an art show next month. It's really exciting. I'm working on a big wall ② .... with two other students.

Next year, I'd like to study more science and learn more about the environment. I'd like to visit the Ras Mohammed ③ .... Park. When I'm older, I'd like a ④ .... that helps the environment. Dad told me to work hard, so that I could go to university.

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

allowed - groups - blew - ripped - map

When the Scouts got off the bus, the teacher gave each group a ① .... He told them they had to go north. The Scouts weren't ② .... to use their phones. The groups set off, using the map to follow the road. It was very hot, so after a while, Seleem and his group stopped to have some water. They sat under a tree, but there was suddenly a strong wind. It ③ .... the map out of Seleem's hands! They ran after it, but when they caught it, the map ④ .... in half.

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

next - doing - vacation - shopping - summer

Yaseen : Are you staying with your grandma?

Youssef : Yes. My grandma isn't well, so I am doing some ① .... for her tomorrow.

Yaseen : What are you doing ② .... week?

Youssef : I'm excited because I am staying with my cousins next week.

Yaseen : What are you doing on the weekend?

Youssef : I'm preparing for a ③ ....

Yaseen : Are you going on vacation this ④ .... ?
Youssef : Yes, and I'm happy because my cousins are going to stay with me in the summer.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. an experiment - a science - has to do - for - competition - Hazem.
▶ ....
2. person - Injy - independent - is - an.
▶ ....
3. to be - need - you - When - determined - do?
▶ .... ?
4. both - and waved - We - at - smiled - her.
▶ ....
5. this summer - on - vacation - Are - going - you?
▶ .... ?
6. week - I'm - next - my cousins - staying - with.
▶ ....
7. will - more - enough sleep - Getting - give you - energy.
▶ ....
8. are - of - What - you - afraid?
▶ .... ?
9. followers - and - a - leader - Every team - needs.
▶ ....
10. try - asked - to - My mom - my best - me.
▶ ....
11. How - weekend - was - the football - game - last?
▶ .... ?
12. internet - the - on - some - research - Do.
▶ ....
13. solve - his - did - Fares - problem - How?
▶ .... ?

14. next week - competing - in a - science - I'm - competition.

▶ ....

15. a scientist - or an - to be - like - I'd - inventor.

▶ ....

8 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. If you are (anxious - afraid - independent), you are happy to do something on your own.
2. When you are (afraid - determined - embarrassed), you believe that you will do or finish something.
3. When someone is (anxious - patient - determined), they are worried or nervous about something.
4. If you are (afraid - anxious - patient), you are able to wait calmly for a long time.
5. When someone is (determined - afraid - independent), they are scared or frightened of something.
6. If you are (independent - determined - embarrassed), you are worried about what other people think, or feeling bad about something you did or said.
7. You are a (anxious - afraid - determined) person. You work hard to find solutions to problems.
8. To (pass - interest - disappoint) somebody means to behave in a way that makes somebody feel a bit sad.
9. The phrase in a (raw - row - crew) means one after the other, in order.
10. When someone is (born - worn - corn) out, they are very tired.
11. Everyone in the class (took part - took time - took an interest) in the school concert. We all participated.
12. It's a good idea to (take time - take part - take an interest) to answer the questions when doing your homework.
13. Amina (took turns - took an interest - took part) in history last summer.
14. When we do a class quiz, we (take part - take an interest - take turns) to answer the questions.

15. When you (make - take - intake) part in a new sport, you can easily make new friends.
16. (Followers - Leaders - Members) inspire and guide their followers to achieve a common goal.
17. (Presidents - Followers - Leaders) work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders.
18. Subheadings tell the reader about the (photo - topic - design) of each part of the text.
19. You can grow date palms, fruit, and vegetables in a/an (oasis - desert - mountain) because there's water.
20. When the wind (calms - stops - blows), it moves the leaves and branches of trees.

GRAMMAR REVISION

9 Choose the correct answer: (Present Continuous)

1. I'm (flying - fly - flew) to Paris on Friday.
2. They (aren't - weren't - don't) coming back until the end of the year.
3. I'm (give - giving - gave) a presentation at work next week.
4. She (is - will - would) having a party for her birthday next month.
5. What (do - were - are) you doing this weekend?
6. They're (starting - started - start) their new job next Monday.
7. The train (was - is - will) leaving at 8:15, so don't be late.
8. He (does - was - is) having dinner with his friends tonight.
9. (Are - Were - Will) you working late tomorrow?
10. I'm (stay - stayed - staying) with my cousins next week.
11. Are you (goes - going - go) on vacation this summer?
12. What are you and your friends (did - doing - do) later today?

10 Choose the correct answer: (Reported Speech)

1. "(Don't - Didn't - Doesn't) be sad," my teacher said.
2. The teacher told (my - I - me) to be quiet.

3. Ibrahim (says - said - asked) me to close the window.

4. "Can I borrow your pen?" she (told - said - tells).

5. Sarah (asked - says - said) me if I could help her with her homework.

6. She politely (said - says - asked) if I could pass her the salt.

7. "May I have some water, please?" (said - says - asked) the child politely.

8. The manager (told - says - said) us to turn off the lights when we leave.

9. Hesham asked me to (lent - lend - lends) him some money.

10. The librarian (says - asked - said) everyone to be quiet.

11. "Make sure you arrive on time," the teacher (told - tells - said).

11 Choose the correct answer: (enjoy - love - like / would like to)

1. I enjoy (swimming - swam - swim) in the ocean.

2. She would (liked - likes - like) to learn how to play the guitar.

3. We enjoy (played - play - playing) board games on weekends.

4. They would like to (go - goes - went) on a road trip across the country.

5. He loves (watched - watching - watch) movies at the cinema.

6. We would like (of - to - on) try the new restaurant in town.

7. She likes (reading - read - reads) books in her free time.

8. We love (traveled - travel - traveling) to new destinations.

9. We would like to (attend - attended - attends) the concert next month.

10. He likes (play - playing - played) football with his friends.

11. We enjoy (watching - watch - watched) the sunset by the beach.

12. He would (like - liking - liked) to improve his language skills.

13. She loves (cooks - cooked - cooking) delicious meals for her family.

14. They enjoy (take - takes - taking) long walks in the park.

15. She would like to (reading - read - reads) more books this year.

16. She enjoys writing poetry and (express - expressing - expressed) her emotions through words.

Unit 8 Test 4

Total 30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. Fares had to do a project on the (geography - language - history - show) of flight.
2. His teacher told him to try again, to make (biographies - histories - photographs - notes) on what he read and to look in books for more ideas.
3. His mom asked him to try his best and to have a (break - go - project - try) when he's tired.
4. He (mixed - planned - showed - played) his ideas, and his poster was the best!

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

determined - competition - anxious - experiment - trying

Youssef is learning how to ride a bike. He has tried four or five times. He really wants to learn. He has decided that he won't stop ① .... until he can ride his bike! Youssef is a ② .... person.
Hazem has to do an ③ .... for a science competition next week, and he's very worried about it. He wants to get good grades, but he can't sleep or eat. Hazem is ④ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Last summer, Magdy went on holiday to the seaside. He stayed with his parents in a nice place close to the sea. Magdy is nineteen. His brother Karam is thirteen. There were mostly young people on the holiday, but there weren't many children there.
They had a wonderful time. They played rackets some of the time with their father. Magdy went swimming a lot. Karam loves swimming too.

They got up early every morning and went for a swim before breakfast. His father did a lot of painting. He is a businessman, but he paints a lot in his free time. The best thing about the holiday was the people. Ahmed made a lot of friends.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Magdy's father paints pictures because it's his (hobby - job - sport - game).
2. Magdy is (younger - older - taller - heavier) than his brother.
3. The underlined word "close" means (far - similar - near - different).

B Answer these questions:

4. What's Magdy's father's job? ▶ ....
5. What was the best thing on that holiday? ▶ ....

The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Tarek was great at writing. ( )
2. Mrs Basma was enthusiastic and wants to help. ( )
3. Some children decided to write news reports in French. ( )
4. Bassant works as a scientist. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. What was the problem with the team's first video?

▶ ....

6. Who knew a lot about sports in the team?

▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. We're (had - has - have - having) dinner with my grandparents next weekend.
2. They like hiking in the mountains and (explore - exploring - explores - explored) nature.
3. Mom (said - told - says - saying) me to go to the store to buy something.
4. I'm (help - helps - helped - helping) my little brother with his homework tomorrow.
5. Is Youssef visiting his uncle (last week - yesterday - tomorrow - last month)?
6. They would like to (volunteer - volunteered - volunteers - volunteering) at a local charity.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. you - been - ever - part of - Have - a team?
▶ .... ?
2. with her - was - math homework - Reem's dad - helping - her.
▶ ....
3. take out - bag - What - of his - Asser - did?
▶ .... ?

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"My summer vacation"

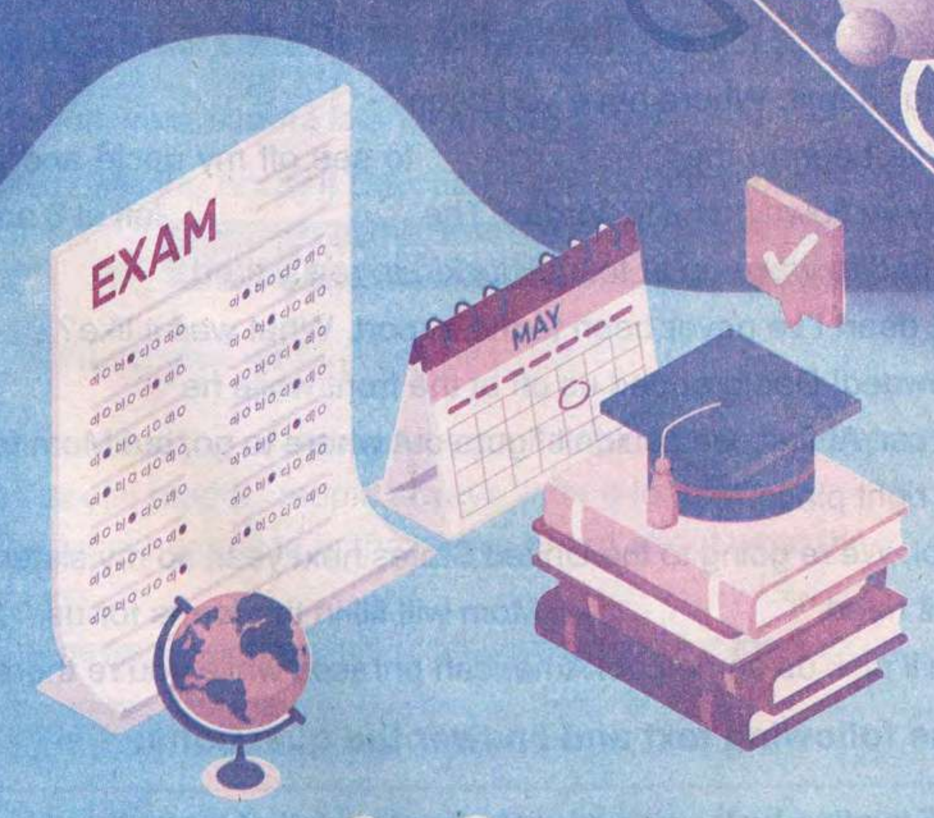
Ideas to help you:

▶ Where will you go? ▶ With whom?
▶ What are you going to do? ▶ Who are you going to visit?

....
....
....
....
....



Part 2



Revision Tests



Revision Test 1

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. Noha is in Grade (sixteen - sixty - six - sixth).
2. Noha is happy to (waste - prepare - spend - share) her ideas in front of the class.
3. Noha enjoys working in a (band - team - staff - group).
4. Noha enjoys (taking - making - having - doing) part in group activities.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

parked – place – flight – passports – airport

Fares : Hello, Samir. Where have you been?

Samir : We've been to the ① .... to see off my uncle and aunt. They've flown home to Jordan. The ② .... left at 8 am, so we had to wake up at four o'clock. I'm really tired.

Fares : Oh, dear! I've never been to the airport. What was it like?

Samir : Crowded! Dad dropped us off at the front while he ③ .... the car. At first, we couldn't figure out where to go, but Mom found the right place.

Fares : Cool. We're going to the United States next year, so my sister and I will need ④ .... Mom will fill in the forms for us.

Samir : You'll pick up some cool American phrases while you're there.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

The ancient Egyptian history is very rich. Egypt is full of treasures which are not found anywhere. These treasures are more valuable than jewels, gold and silver other countries may have.

Tourists come from different countries to enjoy seeing the statues, tombs,

pyramids and temples which were built thousands of years ago. They tell us how our grandfathers were great and clever at all sciences.
At that time, other countries lived in darkness. The Ancient Egyptian kings built those tombs and temples to thank gods, and keep their bodies safe. The ancient Egyptian monuments are valuable because they are part of the world's history.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Our grandfathers were (old - clever - rich - lazy).
2. The underlined word "their" refers to the (tourists - treasures - kings - gods).
3. Tourists come to Egypt from (one - two - similar - different) countries.

B Answer these questions:

4. When were pyramids and temples built? ▶ ....
5. Why are the Ancient Egyptian monuments valuable? ▶ ....

The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Sometimes, the newspaper team had problems to solve. ( )
2. On social media, people always write a lot of words. ( )
3. The local magazine in their town heard about what the children were doing. ( )
4. The newspaper team's success was good for the school. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. What idea did Mrs Basma have for the children?
▶ ....
6. What happened later in the year?
▶ ....



5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. When is Youssef (help - helping - helps - to help) to paint a boat?
2. My science teacher told me to (worked - working - works - work) hard.
3. All the fish will be (killed - to kill - kills - kill) in that polluted water.
4. (Laila - Laila's - Lailas - Lailas') aunt is an engineer.
5. I'd like to (am - be - was - do) a scientist or an inventor.
6. If I (have - has - having - had) a flying car, I would travel all around the world!

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. outside and play - Dad - me - told - to go.

▶ ....

2. we - for - look - Can - ideas - online?

▶ .... ?

3. on vacation - aren't - going - We - summer - this.

▶ ....

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Khaled: (5Ms)

Tell him what you are doing next week and if you are going anywhere this summer. Your email address is saif@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is khaled@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

Revision Test 2

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. Many countries still make electricity using fossil (falls - fuels - feels - fails).
2. (Turning - Breaking - Bringing - Burning) fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases.
3. Greenhouse gases are (nice - great - bad - good) for the environment.
4. High levels of (carbon - oxygen - gas - calcium) dioxide and greenhouse gases cause climate change and air pollution.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

bacteria - decompose - disease - prevent - Store

Drinking dirty water can cause disease because dirty water has a lot of ① .... in it. To ② .... yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water. ③ .... fresh food in a refrigerator, or a cool dry place in your kitchen. The food will stay fresh and it won't start to ④ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Rania and Mustafa have traveled to different places in Egypt. They have been to El Fayoum, where they visited Wadi El Rayyon and a famous temple. They have also been to the Red Sea at Hurghada. They enjoyed the beach, the camel rides and the boat trips. They have also been to Luxor and Aswan where they visited the Valley of the Kings and the High Dam. They haven't been to the North Coast yet. Perhaps, they will go there next summer.

Term 2



A Choose the correct answer:

1. They enjoyed the (temple - High Dam - beach - pyramids) in Hurghade.
2. Wadi El Rayyan is in (Luxor - El Fayoum - Hurghada - Giza).
3. The opposite of the underlined word "different" is (far - similar - near - close).

B Answer these questions:

4. Where may Rania and Mustafa go next summer?
▶ ....
5. What did they visit in Luxor and Aswan?
▶ ....

The Reader - The Silk Road

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Today, it's difficult to buy and sell goods in different parts of the world. ( )
2. In the past, it was safer for traders to travel in caravans. ( )
3. The Silk Road was very important for over 2,500 years. ( )
4. Traveling on the Silk Road was hard. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. How does the Silk Road have its name?
▶ ....
6. Why did travelers in the past use camels?
▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Papyrus wasn't (as smooth - smooth - as smooth as - less smooth) the paper we use today.
2. Taqwa would (like - liking - likes - liked) to go to the future.
3. The wildlife will (is - was - has - be) destroyed if we don't stop pollution.
4. There are three books. They're (Gameelas - Gameelas' - Gameela - Gameela's) books.

5. If you (designed - designing - designs - design) a time machine, where could you go?
6. (Do - Am - Is - Are) you staying with your grandma?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. go - to - exhibition - an - The children - interactive.
▶ ....
2. the weekend - What - doing - are - you - on?
▶ .... ?
3. asked - Dalia - to help - with her homework - me.
▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A visit to the planetarium"

Ideas to help you:

▶ When did you go? ▶ With whom? ▶ What did you do and see there?

....
....
....
....

Revision Test 3

Total ___ / 30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. Plastic doesn't (compose - camp - decompose - complete), so it stays in the ground for a long time.
2. Some plastic can get into the (land - ocean - desert - mountain).
3. (Cutlery - Curley - Cartoon - Clay) that you can eat is becoming popular.
4. Some (audible - bearable - readable - edible) cutlery comes in different flavors!

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

Better - done - pleased - awesome - wow

Seleem : Hi, Tarek.

Tarek : Hi, Seleem. You look happy!

Seleem : I am! I passed my science test with 72%.

Tarek : Oh, wow! That's ① .... news.

Seleem : Thanks! I'm really happy because I usually find science very difficult.

Tarek : Well ② .... ! I'm so ③ .... for you! I didn't pass my science test. I have to do it again.

Seleem : I'm sorry, Tarek. ④ .... luck next time. I'm sure you'll pass next time.

Tarek : Thanks, Seleem.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

The first time I went to a football match was three months ago. It was our national team against Morocco. I went with my friends Ali, Alaa and Ehab. We arrived at Cairo Stadium at two o'clock. The big stadium was full of different people. There were about sixty thousand people there. The match started at three. Each team tried to cross the other goal line with the ball. It was an exciting match. Our players could score three goals. We were all very happy. The match ended at five o'clock and we all began to leave the stadium.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The game took (one - two - three - four) hours.
2. The match was (boring - frightening - tiring - interesting).
3. The underlined word "ended" means (started - began - finished - left).

B Answer these questions:

4. How many friends went to the stadium? ▶ ....
5. What did each team try to do? ▶ ....

The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good cousins. ( )
2. Hatem was the editor of the newspaper. ( )
3. Hatem read everybody's writing, and checked with the teacher. ( )
4. Tarek was the arts journalist. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. When did the children have the idea to produce a newspaper together?
▶ ....
6. What was Hatem's job?
▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Does Mustafa like (worked - working - to working - work) in a team?
2. He (was - has - does - is) working on an engineering project next week.
3. It's important that cheetahs are (protects - protect - protecting - protected) now.
4. If I (enter - entered - enters - entering) a science competition, I'd design a time machine.
5. Ms Dina told us to (answering - answers - answered - answer) the questions with full sentences.
6. Mrs Amal's apartment isn't as (modern - the modern - more modern - modern as) ours.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. and - see - a driverless - Mazen - car - his friends. ▶ ....?
2. me - to wash - Mom - asked - the dishes ▶ ....
3. is - Yaseen - When - meal - cooking - the? ▶ ....?

Term 2



7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Asmaa: (5Ms)

Tell her about the visit your class made to the science museum. Tell her what you saw and what you liked best there. Your email address is doha@school.net and your friend's email address is asmaa@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

Revision Test 4

Total 30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. Wael is (embarrassed - independent - anxious - afraid), but he also enjoys working in a team.
2. Wael is sociable, and he likes (hurting - hunting - making - leaving) new friends.
3. Wael goes to an (art - music - football - science) club after school.
4. Wael is working on a big wall (magazine - newspaper - league - collage) with two other students.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

instruments – play – presentation – concert – choir

Our school ① .... was on Saturday. It was amazing! Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical ② .... including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The ③ .... has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music! The concert started at 5 pm. The school director Mrs Mariam gave a ④ .... before it started.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

In the past, many of the things we used were made in other countries. We had to pay a lot of money to get them. Now, most of these things are made in Egypt. "Made in Egypt" is now written on almost everything we use from the needle to the rocket. For example, cloth is made in Mahalla. Blankets are made in Kafr El-Sheikh. Cars are made in Helwan. Sweets are made in Tanta. Our factories sell their products to different countries in Africa, Asia and even in Europe.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The things we got from other countries were (cheap - ancient - useless - expensive).
2. (Blankets - Sweets - Clothes - Furn-ure) are made in Kafr El-Sheikh.
3. The opposite of the underlined word "past" is (ago - present - old - ancient).

B Answer these questions:

4. What does the underlined word "them" refer to? ▶ ....
5. Where do our factories sell their products? ▶ ....

The Reader - Transportation today

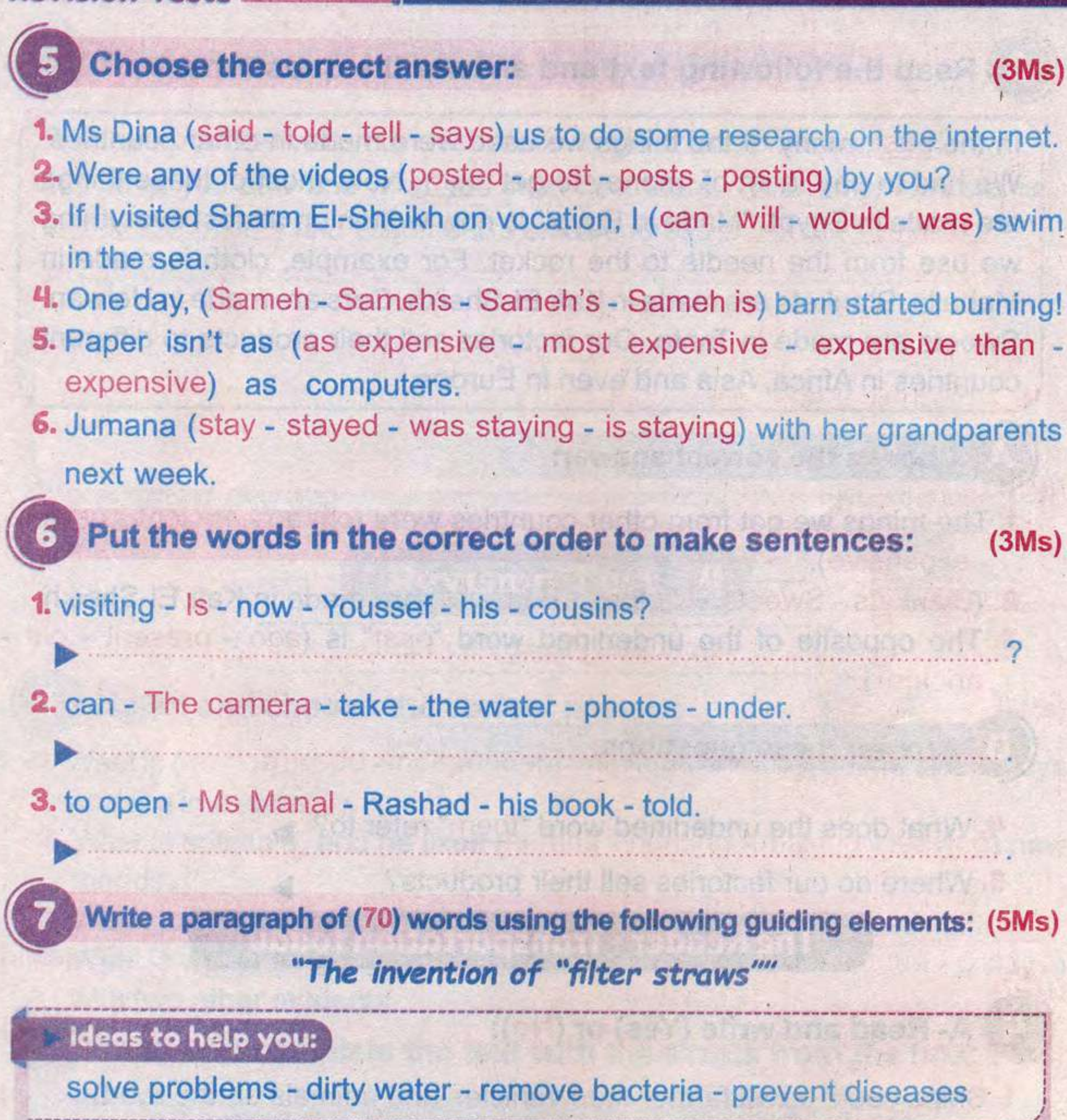
(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Ships could travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road. ( )
2. The Suez Canal was opened in 1896. ( )
3. The Suez Canal is about 193 kilometers long. ( )
4. The Suez Canal is a very important sea route for businesses. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Why was the Suez Canal built? ▶ ....
6. What does the Suez Canal connect? ▶ ....



5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Ms Dina (said - told - tell - says) us to do some research on the internet.
2. Were any of the videos (posted - post - posts - posting) by you?
3. If I visited Sharm El-Sheikh on vocation, I (can - will - would - was) swim in the sea.
4. One day, (Sameh - Samehs - Sameh's - Sameh is) barn started burning!
5. Paper isn't as (as expensive - most expensive - expensive than - expensive) as computers.
6. Jumana (stay - stayed - was staying - is staying) with her grandparents next week.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. visiting - Is - now - Youssef - his - cousins?

▶ .... ?

2. can - The camera - take - the water - photos - under.

▶ ....

3. to open - Ms Manal - Rashad - his book - told.

▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"The invention of "filter straws""

Ideas to help you:

solve problems - dirty water - remove bacteria - prevent diseases

....

....

....

....

....



Revision Test 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. Our school (class - lab - library - concert) was on Saturday.
2. Over (six - sixty - six hundred - sixteen) students were in the concert.
3. There are 24 students in the (competition - opera - orchestra - contest).
4. The (choir - bank - chair - club) has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music!

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

packed – flashlight – aid – backpack – desert

Seleem was really excited to take part in the Scouts' ① .... adventure. The day before, he packed his ② .... However, it was very heavy, and so his mom told him to check if he really needed all that was in it. He ③ .... it again, with her help. This time, he only put in what he needed. He now had a flashlight, a first ④ .... kit, and a water bottle. His friend Asser told him that he would take a compass, so Seleem didn't pack his.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

My name is Reem. My favorite hobby is reading. I like reading exciting stories. Last night, I read a very interesting story about a man and a woman who were sailing across the Atlantic Ocean. There was a terrible storm and their ship sank. They could see land and they swam towards it. They found themselves on a beautiful island. There were no people there. They could live there alone. They built a hut from trees.
They stayed about two months there. While they were sitting by the sea, they saw a ship coming near them. It took them home again.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. They stayed about (60 days - 10 weeks - two years - three months) on the island.
2. The underlined word "it" refers to the (ship - tree - storm - island).
3. Reem's favorite hobby is (writing - drawing - reading - playing).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why did the ship sink? ▶ ....
5. How was the man and the woman rescued? ▶ ....

The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Tarek was great at writing. ( )
2. Mrs Basma was enthusiastic and wants to help. ( )
3. Some children decided to write news reports in French. ( )
4. Bassant works as a scientist. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. What was the problem with the team's first video?
▶ ....
6. Who knew a lot about sports in the team?
▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. (Are - Does - Were - Is) the area designed to be safe enough?
2. If we (don't - wouldn't - didn't - won't) enter the competition, we wouldn't win a prize!
3. Dad asked me (at - of - in - to) put out the garbage.
4. What will be (done - does - to do - do) to help the wildlife?
5. Spring isn't as (as hot - hot as - as hotter - hottest as) summer.
6. I'm sociable, and I like (makes - making - make - to making) new friends.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. you - take - your team - turns - Did - in?
 ▶ .... ?
2. was - It - place - a peaceful - a river - near.
 ▶ ....
3. a good - Cycling - travel - is - way - to.
 ▶ ....

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nesma: (5Ms)

Tell her about the games you enjoyed when you were younger and what you were good at. Your email address is hoda@school.net and your friend's email address is nesma@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....

Total
30

Revision Test 6

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. Faisal Al-Mosawi was a (worried - frightened - talented - scared) football player.
2. After a car accident he couldn't walk and he had to use a/an (sofa - armchair - couch - wheelchair).
3. In 2009, he learned scuba (driving - diving - riding - jumping).
4. In 2018, he broke the (world - country - city - village) record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

storm – shade – space – burning – barn

Farmer Sameh had a barn. One day, Sameh's barn started ① .... ! They saved the sheep, but they couldn't save the barn. While Sameh and his wife Amina built a bigger barn with wood, the sheep sat in the ② .... of the trees. In the winter, the barn was ready. Later that year, there was a terrible ③ .... and other farmers came running with their sheep. They asked to put their sheep in the barn. Sameh's new barn was big enough for everyone's sheep. He agreed because there was lots of ④ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. People from all over the world and from many parts of Egypt like to visit it. The tower is 185 meters high and was built in 1961. Three electric lifts take visitors up to the top which looks like a large lotus flower. At the top, there's a restaurant which moves round while you have your meal or your drink. From the top of the tower, you can see the Nile, all of Cairo, Giza and Helwan. You can see the Pyramids to the west and Cairo Airport to the east.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. People get to the top of the tower (on foot - on the stairs - in a winch - in a lift).
2. The top of the tower looks like a large (lotus - papyrus - jasmine - corn) flower.
3. The underlined word "famous" means (unknown - popular - old - ancient).

B Answer these questions:

4. How old is Cairo Tower? ▶ ....

5. What can people see from the top of the tower? ▶ ....

The Reader - The Silk Road

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Silk was only made in China at first. ( )
2. The Silk Road was important only for buying and selling goods. ( )
3. Constantinople is now known as China. ( )
4. Many towns along the routes became rich. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Where did the Silk Road start?
▶ ....

6. What goods did people from Europe sell?
▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. (Would - Will - Do - Did) you go to Ancient Egypt if you had a time machine?
2. My dad told me (not rush - rush - rush not - not to rush).
3. The article (will publish - will be published - publish - be published) on the newspaper website.
4. If you wanted to meet your friends in the park, you (would - will - must - can) take your jacket and fly there.
5. Ancient Egyptian inventors were (as clever as - cleverer - as clever) inventors today.
6. I (was cooking - am cooking - cooked - cooks) my parents' favorite meal tomorrow.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. use - in our - plastic - We - lives - everyday.
▶ ....
2. did - Ancient - the - What - invent - Egyptians?
▶ .... ?
3. lived - ago - years - of - hundreds - Ahmad Ibn Majid.
▶ ....

Term 2

7 **Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)**

"An amazing adventure"

Ideas to help you:

- Where did you go?
- What skills did you learn?
- Was it difficult?
- What did you like best about the trip?
- What were the challenges of the trip?

....

....

....

....

Revision Test 7

Total 30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)**

1. Sylvia is an international (vet - doctor - journalist - teacher).
2. Sylvia works for an English (leaflet - newspaper - magazine - book).
3. Sylvia really loves the (French - German - Arabic - English) language.
4. Sylvia studied journalism at (university - school - kindergarten - nursery).

2 **Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)**

machine - inventions - designed - history - competition

Reem : If I entered a science ① ...., I'd design a time machine. I'd love to travel to a different time in ② ....

Nagwa : That's a great idea. If you designed a time ③ ...., where would you go?

Lara : Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.

Reem : If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt! I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.

Nagwa : I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine. I'd go to the future to see what ④ .... people have!

Lara : Let's make our competition entry about a time machine, then! If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places. I think that idea would win the competition!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Computers are probably the most important invention. They are machines which follow programs that tell the computer how to store and control electronic information. A computer can do difficult sums very quickly. Computers are important because they are flexible, accurate and can store lots of information in their memory.

Computers are now used in banks, at homes and in factories. The internet allows people to communicate with anyone in seconds. Most books are now made with the help of computers. Even doctors use computers to help them examine their patients.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The internet is the fastest means of (transport - entertainment - electronics - communication).
2. Computers are (modern - ancient - old - unknown).
3. The underlined word "store" means (leave - forget - keep - know).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why are computers important? ▶ ....
5. What do programs tell the computer? ▶ ....

The Reader - Transportation Today

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. The Silk Road became less important when people started to transport goods by sea. ( )

2. In the past, the journey by sea from Asia, around Africa to Europe, was short and safe. ( )
3. The Suez Canal is 2,000 kilometers long. ( )
4. Today, about 19,000 cargo ships use the Suez Canal every year. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Why did people start to use ships? ▶ ....
6. What goods does Egypt export? ▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. I think ink is as (useful - useful as - useful than - more useful) paper.
2. They (is staying - stayed - were staying - are staying) with their grandparents next week.
3. The bamboo (was - were - be - are) cut down for the pandas to eat.
4. The river habitat will be (destroys - destroyed - destroy - be destroying).
5. Mr Muhammad (said – told - tell - say), "Do some research on the internet."
6. If you (invented - invent - inventing - invent) a new form of transportation, what would it be?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. class - area - Mr Kamal's - the sports - decorated. ▶ ....
2. does - mom - Rania's - Why - koshari - make? ▶ .... ?
3. Mom - and - putting - away - clothes - my - are - I. ▶ ....

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Dina: (5Ms)

Tell her about an article you read about pollution. Tell her how pollution is dangerous to the environment and how we can stop it. Your email address is reem@gmail.com and your friend's email address is dina@yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

Total
30

Revision Test 8

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. When I was in (France - Morocco - England - Egypt), my favorite place was Marrakech.
2. There was a (shopping - traveling - studying - swimming) pool.
3. Moroccans speak French, so I (picked - clicked - put - looked) up a lot of French phrases.
4. Morocco is a (bad - awful - wonderful - silly) place!

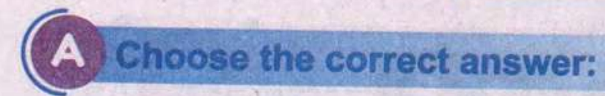
2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

athletes - leg - record - training - underwater

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to the hospital, where the doctors removed part of his ① .... Then, Omar heard about two disabled ② ...., and he wanted to be like them. He started ③ .... hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world ④ .... in holding his breath underwater. Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Most modern inventions have helped man to lead a happy and comfortable life. However, some of them may make him suffer greatly. Planes, trains, buses and cars all help to carry people from one place to another in a very short time. The television and the radio help people to enjoy and spend their time happily. Telephones help us contact our friends and relatives. In the kitchen, we find the cooker and the fridge which help us cook food and keep it until we need it. The most important invention is the computer which is used in different fields like business, medicine, education and others. The mobile phone appeared and spread only a few years ago. It's of great help to most people, whatever their jobs are.



A Choose the correct answer:

1. The most important invention is the (mobile - computer - fridge - telephone).
2. There are (eight - nine - ten - eleven) inventions mentioned in the text.
3. The underlined word "comfortable" means (easy - difficult - hard - terrible).

B Answer these questions:

4. What means of transport mentioned in the passage?
   ▶ ....
5. Why are telephones important?
   ▶ ....

The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine became friends at high school. ( )
2. Hatem was the sports journalist. ( )
3. They had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together when they were in Grade 6. ( )
4. Nadine's friend invited her to an art exhibition. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Who was a good leader?
   ▶ ....
6. What did Nadine like to do outside of school?
   ▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Yaseen's sisters (am - is - was - are) going to the store.
2. A journalist will (be sent - send - sends - sent) to investigate the river.
3. Toothpaste is as (older - oldest - the old - old) as herbs.
4. Mr (Abdullahs - Abdullah - Abdullahs' - Abdullah's) students are doing a test.

5. Dad asked (my - mine - I - me) to tidy my room.
6. Asser (doesn't - wouldn't - won't - didn't) use a magazine if he wanted to find ideas for a competition.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. my sister - My dad - up - wakes - in the morning - at - 7 o'clock.
▶ ....
2. of fish - the - does - What type - look like - camera?
▶ .... ?
3. like - to - Would - you - a sailor - be?
▶ .... ?

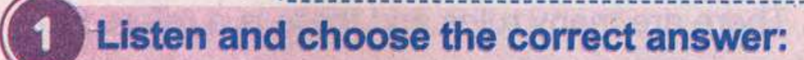
7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A visit to a famous place"

Ideas to help you:

- ▶ What was that place?
- ▶ When was the visit?
- ▶ What did you see there?
- ▶ Who went with you?
- ▶ What did you take with you?

....
....
....
....



Revision Test 9



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. Every year we have a garage (seal - sole - sale - sail) at our school.
2. (Doctors - Volunteers - Managers - Nerses) from our school all bring in old items.
3. The money we collect is used to help children who need health (care - career - cure - car) in hospitals.
4. We also buy some new (books - bags - shoes - toys) and take them to the children with our teachers.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

teamwork – half – joined – positions – leader

Omar : How was the football game last weekend, Seif?

Seif : It was really good, thanks, Omar.

Omar : Did you win?

Seif : Yes, we won the game but it wasn't easy. We were losing in the first ① .... Our captain, Hesham, guided us on how to play the game in the second half. That's why he's a good ② .... He had a great plan and we all followed it. We won because of good teamwork.

Omar : That sounds great. You've been happier since you ③ .... the football team.

Seif : Yes, I have. When we practice, we take turns to play in different ④ .... so I've learned a lot. And I've made some good friends.

Omar : I'll come and watch your next game.

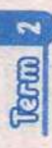
3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Everywhere, people play football. Football was very different when people began to play it. All the men of one village played against all the men of another village. The match went on all day.

Today, there are two teams of eleven players. The game lasts for about an hour and a half with a rest in the middle. The teams play matches on grass fields with white lines around the sides. When the ball goes outside the lines, the game stops. There are many rules and there is a referee to make players obey the rules.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The football team consists of (ten - eleven - twelve - thirteen) players and a goalkeeper.
2. The football match lasts for (less than - more than - exactly - similar to) an hour.



3. The underlined word "lasts" means (stops - walks - continues - finishes).

B Answer these questions:

4. How was football different in the past? ▶ ....
5. Why is there a referee in a football match? ▶ ....

The Reader - The Silk Road

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Traveling on the Silk Road was easy. ( )
2. The Silk Road reached the Mediterranean Sea over time. ( )
3. Silk was a very cheap material. ( )
4. The Silk Road made it impossible for countries to trade goods and share ideas ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. Where did the Silk Road start? ▶ ....
6. Why was the Silk Road sometimes dangerous? ▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Are you (goes - going - went - go) anywhere this summer?
2. The beauty of the river will (enjoying - be enjoyed - enjoy - enjoys) by people again.
3. Villages (don't - wasn't - won't - aren't) as busy as cities.
4. We're in Miss (Amal - Amals - Amal's - Amals') class.
5. The cheetahs are (tracks - tracked - to tracking - track) so they don't get lost.
6. My mom asked me to (goes - go - went - going) to bed when I was tired.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. Her - finished - homework - be - won't - this evening. ▶ ....
2. Egypt - in - Does - living - like - Sylvia? ▶ .... ?
3. up - looking - They - are - route - the - to the beach. ▶ ....

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Farida: (5Ms)

Tell her about the charity work you do at school, how you help your friends who can't read or write well, and how you help your community. Your email address is salma@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is farida@hotmail.com.

....

....

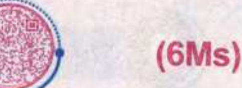
....



Revision Test 10

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)



1. Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to (dive - travel - swim - snorkel) on the sea today.
2. He was the first Arab (driver - teacher - seaman - traveler).
3. He wrote about routes to different places and the history of (swimming - diving - sailing - traveling).
4. His books helped (vets - divers - sailors - swimmers) travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

time – interest – take – part – turns

When you take ① .... in a competition with your friends, do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes ② .... to speak, and takes ③ .... to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an ④ .... in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Louis Braille was born in 1809. When he was three, he went blind after an accident. Although he was blind, he went to the primary school. In 1819, he went to the world's first school for the blind in Paris. In 1821, Braille met Barbier, the inventor of a way to send messages. Braille made Barbier's system better known by Braille's name and used by nearly all blind people. In 1826, he became the first blind teacher at his school when he was 17. In 1829 he wrote his first book. He died in 1852.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The world's first school for the blind was in (New York - London - Paris - Rome).
2. Braille went blind in (1812 - 1819 - 1821 - 1826).
3. The opposite of the underlined word "better" is (worse - best - worst - bad).

B Answer these questions:

4. What did Braille invent? ▶ ....
5. How old was Braille when he died? ▶ ....

The Reader - News Team (4Ms)

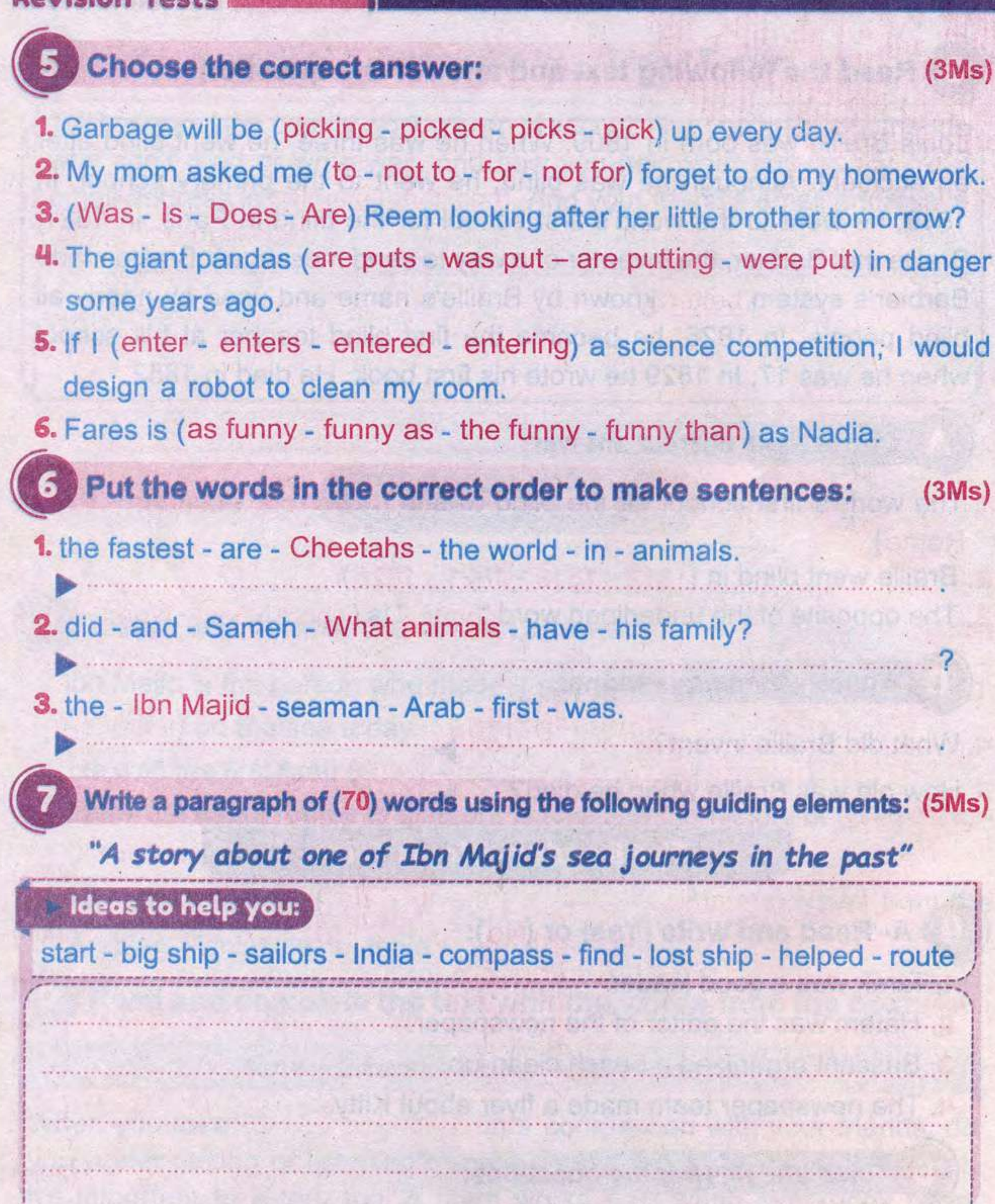
4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

1. Tarek was a good leader. ( )
2. Hatem was the editor of the newspaper. ( )
3. Bassant organized a beach clean-up. ( )
4. The newspaper team made a flyer about Kitty. ( )

B Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)

5. What was the problem with the team's first video?
▶ ....
6. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody!"?
▶ ....

Term 2



5 Choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Garbage will be (picking - picked - picks - pick) up every day.
2. My mom asked me (to - not to - for - not for) forget to do my homework.
3. (Was - Is - Does - Are) Reem looking after her little brother tomorrow?
4. The giant pandas (are puts - was put – are putting - were put) in danger some years ago.
5. If I (enter - enters - entered - entering) a science competition, I would design a robot to clean my room.
6. Fares is (as funny - funny as - the funny - funny than) as Nadia.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. the fastest - are - Cheetahs - the world - in - animals.
   ▶ ....
2. did - and - Sameh - What animals - have - his family?
   ▶ ....?
3. the - Ibn Majid - seaman - Arab - first - was.
   ▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A story about one of Ibn Majid's sea journeys in the past"

Ideas to help you:

start - big ship - sailors - India - compass - find - lost ship - helped - route

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Part 3

Listening Scripts





Listening Scripts



In 2009, Faisal Al-Mosawi learned scuba diving, and he decided to become the fastest diver in the world. In 2018, he broke the world record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes. He broke a record that was set in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability. Today, Faisal continues to scuba dive, and he inspires young people by giving talks. Faisal wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities.



Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India, Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed every day. They aren't watched all the time, but they are tracked, so they don't get lost.



We all know that cycling is a good way to travel; it keeps you fit, and it's good for the environment. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which glows in the dark. These paths are called "glow-in-the-dark bike paths". These paths store solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the paths glow softly. Cyclists can see where they are going in the dark. These paths are safe, and they're good for the environment!



Fares had to do a project on the history of flight. He had to make a poster but he couldn't get it right. His friend told him to ask for help. His friend said it was good to check. His teacher told him to try again, to make notes on what he read and to look in books for more ideas. His mom asked him to try his best and to have a break when he's tired. His dad told him to stop and think and to take time to plan. So, Fares asked, he read, and he tried. He planned his ideas, and his poster was the best!



My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities.



Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels like: coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like carbon dioxide and methane. However, greenhouse gases are bad for the environment. High levels of carbon dioxide and greenhouse gases cause climate change and air pollution.



Plastic doesn't decompose, so it stays in the ground for a long time. Some plastic can then get into the ocean. Lots of people want to find a better idea, and cutlery that you can eat is becoming popular. This can be made with special rice, or flour, and some edible cutlery comes in different flavors, too!



My name is Wael, and I'm in Grade 6. I'm independent, but I also enjoy working in a team. I'm sociable, and I like making new friends. I go to an art club after school. I'm taking part in an art show next month. It's really exciting. I'm working on a big wall collage with two other students.



Our school concert was on Saturday. It was amazing! Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical instruments including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The choir has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music! The concert started at 5 pm.



Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player. However, after a car accident he couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair. He was 20 years old. Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a challenge. So, in 2009, he learned scuba diving and he decided to become the fastest diver in the world. In 2018, he broke the world record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes.



I'm Sy[illegible] I'm an international journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism at university



When I was in Morocco, my favorite place was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We stayed at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom woke me up early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I picked up a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi dropped us off at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!



Every year we have a garage sale at our school. This means volunteers from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen equipment. These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers. Everyone is really happy!



Ahmad Ibn Majid was born in 1432. Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. He was the first Arab seaman, and he learned how to navigate the seas. He became a famous navigator and, over the years, he wrote many books. He wrote about routes to different places and the history of sailing. His books helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India and East Africa.

Part 4

Answer Key





Part 1 The Set Book

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) fascinated (2) sailors
(3) seaman (4) navigate

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) sailed (2) Ocean
(3) explore (4) journey

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
(1) travel (2) born
(3) astronomy (4) describing

4 Read the text and answer:
(1) navigator (2) navigate (3) compass
(4) Ibn Majid wrote 38 books.
(5) They helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India, East Africa, and other places.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) How did he help sea travelers?
(2) Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman.
(3) Why was astronomy important?
(4) He learned how to navigate the sea.
(5) What type of books did he write?
(6) Ibn Majid wanted to explore the seas and oceans.
(7) Would you like to be a sailor?

6 Write a short story:
Once upon a time, there was an amazing adventure! Ibn Majid, a brave sailor, sailed on a big ship with his crew. They wanted to go to India. But oh no! They got lost at sea! Luckily, Ibn Majid had a special compass. It helped the lost ship find the right path to India. It was an exciting journey navigating across the big ocean and exploring new places.

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) decided (2) organized
(3) filled (4) looked

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) stayed (2) woke
(3) picked (4) dropped

3 Read and complete the text:
(1) went (2) dropped
(3) figured (4) put

4 Read and complete the dialogue:
(1) airport (2) saw
(3) parked (4) passports

5 Choose the correct answer:
(1) in (2) up (3) off (4) up (5) up
(6) off (7) out (8) away
(9) off her husband (10) it in
(11) up the route (12) them away

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1. My dad wakes my sister up at 7 o'clock in the morning.
2. He picked up some German phrases in Berlin.
3. They are looking up the route to the beach.
4. I and mom are putting away my clothes.

7 Write a paragraph:
I went on a visit to a famous place called the Grand Canyon in the USA. My family went with me on this great adventure. We visited it last summer during our vacation. We packed our bags and took some snacks and water with us. When we arrived, we were amazed by the beautiful views. We hiked along the route and took pictures. It was an experience I will never forget.

Lessons (3-4)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) environment (2) canoe
(3) challenge (4) tent

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) banker (2) leg
(3) athletes (4) training
(5) record (6) underwater

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
(1) accident (2) crutch
(3) record (4) dreams

4 Read the text and answer:
(1) football (2) 2009 (3) slowest
(4) He couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair.
(5) Faisal wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- What did Emily like best about her adventure?
2- He had a good job as a banker.
3- Would you like to go on an adventure?
4- Omar had a terrible accident on his motorbike.
5- What were the challenges of the trip?
6- He wanted to break a world record.

6 Write a paragraph:
Omar Hegazy's story is truly inspiring. He was an active person who loved sports but had an accident that left him in a wheelchair. Instead of giving up, he found inspiration from disabled athletes. Omar started swimming and trained hard. In 2022, he broke world records for swimming underwater distances. He even swam across the Aqaba Gulf and cycled from Taba to the Egyptian Pyramids! Omar's determination and achievements inspire others with disabilities to follow their dreams.

Lesson (5)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) astronaut (2) university
(3) course (4) trip

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) fitness (2) spacesuits
(3) spaceship (4) sick

3 Read and complete the text:
(1) mission (2) attached
(3) gravity (4) floating

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- chosen	2- are taught	3- taught
4- Is	5- are stored	6- are shown
7- tested	8- are	9- cleaned
10- is put	11- ask	12- are asked
13- checked	14- attached	15- is heated
16- thrown	17- are	18-asked

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- A new astronaut is taught many things.
2- How is the spaceship cleaned?
3- Astronauts need to be physically strong.
4- Is your suitcase packed for space?
5- You should study science at school.
6- When are clothes thrown away?

6 Write an email:
From: ehab@yahoo.com
To: fares@gmail.com
Subject: Book Recommendation: Life as an Astronaut
Hi Fares,
I wanted to tell you about a book I read called "Life as an Astronaut." It's really interesting and gives you an idea of what astronauts do in space. The book talks about their training, daily routines, and the challenges they face. I found it fascinating to learn about how they work together as a team and the incredible views they see during spacewalks. I think you might enjoy reading it too! See you soon.
Yours,
Ehab

Lesson (6)

1 Read and complete the text:
1- ambitious 2- climb
3- adventures 4- achieve

2 Read and complete the text:
1- guide 2- trips
3- equipment 4- mountain

3 Put the words in the correct order:
1- What was Alyssa's dad's job?
2- She decided to climb Mount Everest.
3- What did she do when she was14?
4- Alysaa is an amazing young woman.
5- What was Alysaa's amazing achievement?

4 Write a biography:
One person who really inspires me is Sarah Thompson. She was an amazing athlete, a motivational speaker, and someone who overcame a disability to achieve incredible things. First, Sarah was born in London on April 10, 1990. Even though she had a back injury when she was young, she never gave up. Next, she

became a Paralympic swimmer and won lots of gold medals in the London 2012 Paralympic Games. Then, Sarah used her story to inspire others by giving speeches. After that, she worked for charities to support people with disabilities. Finally, she started her own successful business, helping people with disabilities get the sports equipment they need. Sarah Thompson's story shows that you can do anything if you believe in yourself and work hard.

Lesson (7)

1 Read and complete the text:

1- village 2- friends
3- grew 4- scenes

2 Put the very in the correct order:

(1) They were good friends.
(2) Who would you like to travel with?
(3) He pretended to be dead.
(4) What time should we leave?
(5) They studied at the same school.

3 Write a short story:

There was a boy named Tim who loved adventure. One day, he found a special map at the library. It led him on an exciting journey through jungles and mountains. Tim faced many challenges, but he never gave up. Finally, he discovered a hidden treasure! Along the way, he learned about friendship and the importance of working together. Reading books made Tim feel inspired and gave him a big imagination for his adventures.

Unit (5) Test (1)

1 Listen and choose:

1- fourteen 2- Morocco
3- wheelchair 4- internet

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- world 2- humans
3- canoe 4- challenge

3 Read the text and answer:

1- rockets and spaceships
2- strong 3- oxygen
4- Yes, I agree with them.
5- There is no air or water on the moon.

4 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No 2- Yes 3- No 4- Yes
4- People traded silk between China, in the east, and the countries we now know as Europe, in the west.
5- Because they could travel long distances in hot, dry weather.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- off 2- prepared
3-put away her new book
4- are done 5- is watched 6- reading

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Which world records did Omar Hegazy break?
2- Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago.
3- What were the challenges of the trip?

7 Write a paragraph:

I went on a cool adventure to the Amazon rainforest. It was tough, but I learned lots of cool things like finding my way through the thick jungle and spotting different animals. It was hard at times, but the best part was seeing all the colorful nature and hearing the unique sounds of the rainforest. The challenges included walking a lot and dealing with the hot and sticky weather, but it was all worth it for the amazing experience.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the text:

1- sale 2- volunteers 3- equipment 4- care

2 Read and complete the text:

1- hutch 2- responsible 3- check
4- vaccinations

3 Read and complete the text:

1- raise 2- decorate 3- community 4- crafts

4 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- Grades 2- calculations 3- newspaper
4- articles

5 Read the text and answer:

1- children 2- article 3- editor
4- They go twice a week.

5- Because there are articles about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too!

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Every year we have a garage sale at our school.
2- Mrs Doaa is married to a vet.
3- Would you like to be an editor?
4- The children love our school newspaper.
5- The editor thought the story was great.

7 Write an email:

From: rana@school.net
To: dina@hotmail.com
Subject: The charity work
Hey Dina،
I hope this email finds you well. I wanted to share some exciting news with you about the charity work I've been involved in at school. I've been helping my friends, who struggle with reading and writing, by teaching them during our lunch breaks. It's been an amazing feeling to see their progress and confidence grow.
I've also been actively involved in community service projects, like organizing food distribution and volunteering at local shelters. It feels amazing to give back and make a positive impact.
I hope I hear about your own experiences!
Take care,
Rana

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:

1- were brought 2- are fed
3- are tracked 4- are protected

2 Read and complete the text:

1- wasn't protected 2- was cut down
3- were put 4- were given

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- are 2- tracked 3- were put 4- was
5- given 6- Is 7- protected 8-posted
9- was destroyed 10- were put
11- are fed 12- aren't watched

4 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Cheetahs are the fastest animals in the world.
2- Is the area designed to be safe enough؟
3- They aren't watched all the time.
4- Giant pandas were put in danger.
5- It's important that they are protected.

Lessons (3-4)

1 Read and complete the text:

1- international 2- stories 3- interviewed
4- editor

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- Oh, no 2- That's too 3- a pity

3 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- wow! 2- That's awesome 3- done!
4- pleased for you! 5- Better luck next time.

4 Read the text and answer:

1- Egypt 2- university 3- national
4- She decided to focus on English language at school.
5- A journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate well to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- What can you see in the photos؟
2- Oh, no! That's too bad!
3- Why was Sylvia excited last Monday؟
4- I'm so pleased for you!
5- I studied journalism at university.
6- Does Sylvia like living in Egypt?

6 Write a paragraph:

I would love to be a journalist! It would be so exciting to ask people questions and write stories. I could tell everyone about important things happening in the world. I could meet famous people and learn from them. It would be like being a detective, finding out the truth, and sharing it with others. Plus, I love writing and telling stories, so being a journalist would be perfect for me. I think it would be a fun and important job to have.

Lesson (5)

1 Read and complete the text:

1- home 2- peaceful 3- walks 4- fishermen

2 Read the text and answer:

1- river 2- photos 3- destroy
4- He sent the reporter to investigate the problem.

5- The river will be cleaned up and the fish will be healthy again.

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- sent 2- destroyed 3- killed 4- come
5- be 6- cleaned 7- will feed
8- will be fed 9- send 10- done
11- will publish 12- will be published

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1- It was a peaceful place near a river.
2- I'd like to be a news reporter.
3- Can I work for you?
4- All the fish will be killed.
5- Nadine wrote her notes for her news report.

5 Write an email:
From: mayar@hotmail.com
To: nada@school.net
Subject: Pollution
Hi Nada,
I hope you're doing well. I recently read an article about pollution and its impact on the environment, and it got me thinking about how important it is for us to take action. Pollution represents a big threat to our planet, harming habitats, wildlife, and even our own health. But we can make a difference! Simple steps like reducing waste, recycling, and using eco-friendly products can help reduce pollution. Let's spread awareness and encourage others to join us in protecting our environment. Together, we can create a cleaner and healthier world!
See you soon,
Mayar

Lesson (6)

1 Read and complete the text:
1- awesome 2- decorated 3- races 4- took

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- Amir's 2- Reem's 3- Amal's
4- Gameela's 5- Shehab's 6- Abdullah's

3 Read and complete the text:
1- concert 2- instruments 3- choir
4- presentation

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1- What type of text is it?Mr. Kamal's class decorated the sports area.
3- I'm so proud of all of you.
4- What does the text describe?
5- Our sports day was amazing!

6 Write a news report:
An exciting sports competition happened in our community, and it was so much fun! There were different sports, like football, basketball and volleyball. People came to watch and cheer for their favorite teams. The players showed amazing skills and worked together as a team. One person said, "It was fantastic to see how focused and competitive they all were!" The competition brought everyone together and made us feel like a big family.
It was an awesome event that showed us the power of sports to bring people joy and make us feel united.

Lesson (7)

1 Read and complete the text:
1- sheep 2- honey 3- barn 4- build

2 Read and complete the text:
1- burning 2- shade 3- storm 4- space

3 Put the words in the correct order:
1- What animals did Sameh and his family have?
2- Farmer Sameh had a very happy life.
3- They can stay in the shade.
4- Where will you put the sheep?
5- Sameh kept sheep and chickens.

Unit (6) Test (2)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1- farm 2- sell 3- sheep 4- beans

2 Read and complete the text:
1- journalist 2- newspaper 3- editor
4- press

3 Read the text and answer:
1- information 2- front 3- parts
4- Because in this way, they learn what is going on in the world.
5- There are news magazines, literary magazines and magazines for special interests such as photography, sports and art.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- were 2- Is 3- sent

4- be sold 5- Laila's 6- used

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Do you know the people in this village?
2- Reem won first place for her high jump.
3- What will be done to help the wildlife?

7 Write an email:
From: amgad@yahoo.com
To: yousef@hotmail.com
Subject: Sports day
Hi Yousef,
I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you all about the amazing sports day we had at school. It was so much fun! We played a variety of games, like jumping, football and tug-of-war. Guess what? Our team won the tug-of-war competition! It was such an exciting moment.
The whole day was filled with energy and happiness. Everyone was cheering and supporting their teams. We had friendly competitions and enjoyed cheering for our classmates. It was a fantastic day filled with laughter, teamwork, and healthy competition.
I wish you could have been there to join in the fun. Hopefully, we can have another sports day soon, and you can be a part of it.
Take care,
Amgad

Review (3) Test (3)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1- adventurer 2. climbing
3. ten 4. Mount Everest

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:
1- zookeeper 2- fed
3- inside 4- cheetahs

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:
1- Luxor 2- In 3- discovered
4- Mom woke her up early so she could visit her uncle.
5- At the bus stop

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1-No 2- Yes 3- No 4- No

B- Read and answer the questions:
5. In Xi'an, a large, rich city in China.
6. Because its routes went through many countries and different types of land, across deserts and mountains.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- off 2- were 3- destroyed
4- Omar's 5- are taught
6- Will be checked

6 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) We travel into space in a spaceship.
(2) Her homework won't be finished this evening.
(3) What were the challenges of the trip?

7 Write a paragraph:
The most important international news story for me was a great fire in a bank in USA. It was very dangerous and it took my interest. It happened yesterday evening. All the staff were terrified. Luckily, nobody was hurt. The manager's office was burnt. I think they will close the bank for a short time.

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) disease (2) bacteria (3) prevent
(4) Store (5) decompose

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) planet (2) decompose
(3) cutlery (4) edible

3 Read the following text:
A: (1) travel (2) solar (3) healthy
B:
(4) Glow-in-the-dark bike paths
(5) These paths are safe, and they are good for the environment.

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1- A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water.
2- Which invention would you like to use?
3- Cycling is a good way to travel.
4- I love learning about inventions.
5- The bacteria can't pass through the straw.
6- Which invention is the most important?

5 Write a paragraph:
Filter straws are a clever invention. They solve the problem of dirty water by removing bacteria, which prevents diseases. With these straws, you can drink water from any source without worrying. They're simple yet effective. Filter straws are vital for clean and healthy water.

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) invented (2) would (3) 'd invent
(4) wanted (5) 'd put on (6) flew
(7) would take

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) competition (2) history
(3) machine (4) inventions
(5) time

3 Choose the correct answer:
(1) entered, would design
(2) wouldn't, wanted
(3) Would you, had
(4) didn't, wouldn't
(5) stopped, would lose
(6) entered (7) take (8) could
(9) went (10) made (11) would
(12) designed (13) met (14) invent
(15) had

4 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) I think that idea would win the competition!
(2) What is a time machine?
(3) You can work in groups to talk about your ideas.
(4) Can we look for ideas online?
(5) I'd love to travel to a different time in history.

Lessons (3-4)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) looks (2) sea life (3) feels
(4) waterproof (5) sounds (6) coral reefs

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) exhibition (2) interactive
(3) driverless (4) planetarium

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
(2) driverless (2) control
(3) underwater (4) space

4 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) The children go to an interactive exhibition.
(2) Where does the camera take photos?
(3) Mazen and his friends see a driverless car.
(4) The camera can take photos under the water.
(5) What is Dr Amin's invention?

5 Write an email:
From: hani@gmail.com
To: yasser@school.net
Subject: Science Museum Trip
Hey Yasser,
I wanted to tell you about our school trip to the science museum. It was so cool! We saw an exhibition about driverless cars and did a project on it. We had to imagine where we would go if we had a car that could go anywhere. Wael wanted to fly in the sky, Fares wanted to go underwater, but I couldn't decide. Then we went to an interactive exhibition about robots and learned a lot. Finally, we visited the planetarium and saw stars and planets. It was awesome! If I had a driverless flying car, I'd go to space!
Take care,
Hani

Lesson (5)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) inventions (2) Egyptians
(3) existed (4) sign

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) plow (2) soil
(3) pull (4) engines

3 Read and complete the text:
(1) record (2) ink
(3) communicated (4) papyrus

4 Choose the correct answer:
(1) isn't (2) aren't (3) is
(4) isn't (5) weren't (6) is
(7) weren't (8) is (9) as
(10) as easy as (11) isn't
(12) good as (13) as (14) easy
(15) useful as (16) old
(17) as clever as (18) important

Term 2

5 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) What did the Ancient Egyptians invent?
(2) They understood how the human body worked.
(3) Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean.
(4) Farming was difficult in the past.
(5) Ancient Egyptian inventors were clever.

Lesson (6)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) eat (2) trapped
(3) beaches (4) recycled

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) ocean (2) effect
(3) trapped (4) environment

3 Read and complete the text:
(1) solution (2) problem
(2) reasons (4) chip

4 Read and complete the text:
(1) fuels (2) creates
(3) gases (4) climate

5 Punctuate these sentences:
(1) We saw lots of things at the art exhibition: paintings, sculptures, murals, and mosaics.
(2) The river was full of plastic pollution: chip packages, water bottles, and food containers.
(3) There are many forms of renewable energy: wind, solar, wave, and water.
(4) We can do things to stop plastic pollution: reduce, reuse, and recycle.

6 Put the words in the correct order:
(5) We use plastic in our everyday lives.
(6) Plastic can have a very bad effect on sea life.
(7) The Ocean Net is a special invention.
(8) The Seabin is an interesting solution.

7 Write about the problem and solution:
Problem:
In Kenya, elephants often go into farms and ruin the crops, which causes big problems for the farmers. It also makes people harm elephants.
Solution:
To fix this, one solution is to put beehives in the fields. Elephants are scared of bees, so they will stay away from the farms. This helps keep the crops safe and makes it easier for farmers and elephants to live together peacefully.

Lesson (7)

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
(1) creative (2) solve
(3) pots (4) idea

2 Read the following text:
A: (1) birdfeeders (2) feed (3) pushed
B:
(4) It is difficult for Mr Hamdy to fill his birdfeeders because he hurt his leg.
(5) Rania took koshari to Mr Hamdy.

3 Put the words to make correct sentences:
(1) What does Rania take to Mr Hamdy to eat?
(2) Mr Hamdy loved feeding the birds.
(3) Do you need any help?
(4) Rania put the rope around the gatepost.
(5) Why does Rania's mom make koshari?

Unit (7) Test (4)

1 Listen and choose:
1- Disease 2- Bacteria
3- Refrigerator 4- Prevent

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- inventions 2- flying
3- dangerous 4- jacket

3 Read the text and answer:
1- light bulb 2- leave 3- rich
4- At twelve Edison began to sell newspapers and sweets in trains to get money.
5- Edison was asked to leave school because he didn't do his school work.
6- His mother taught him the most important things and encouraged him to read a lot about science.

4 The Reader:
A - Read and write:
1- False 2- True 3- False 4- False
B- Read and answer:
1- When they were in Grade 6.

2- Hatem was the editor. He was a good leader, and great at writing. His job was to decide which stories should be their main stories.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1-went 2- hot as 3- know
4- as good 5- would 6- as smooth as

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- What type of fish does the camera look like?
2- Cycling is good for the environment.
3- What is inside the planetarium?

7 Write a paragraph:

I went to the Science Museum with my family. We saw cool exhibits about space, did experiments, and watched a planetarium show. It was amazing to learn about the universe and explore fun activities. The planetarium show was the best part, where we saw the beauty of space. It was a fun and educational visit that left us inspired by science.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the text:

(1) homework (2) explained
(3) understood (4) patient

2 Read and complete the text:

(1) anxious (2) presentations
(3) practice (4) advice

3 Put the words in the correct order:

1- When do you try and be patient?
2- Youssef is learning how to ride a bike.
3- Are you an independent person?
4- Injy is making some cakes for a charity.
5- When do you sometimes feel anxious?
6- Mom and I were walking down the street.

4 Write a paragraph:

A poor boy lived in a tiny village. He studied hard and was patient. He wanted to be independent. He worked, learned, and saved money. Over time, he started a small business. It grew bigger and bigger. He became a rich businessman. He was successful because he was determined.

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:

(1) busy (2) store
(3) meal (4) surprise

2 Read and complete the text:

(1) shopping (2) staying
(3) boat (4) vacation

3 Complete the text:

(1) is staying (2) is leaving
(3) are going (4) are visiting
(5) are having (6) is packing

4 Choose the correct answer:

(1) Is (2) are (3) isn't
(4) are (5) Are (6) making
(7) coming (8) visiting (9) going
(10) next (11) staying
(12) tomorrow (13) helping
(14) am cooking (15) are staying

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- When is Yaseen cooking the meal?
2- We aren't going on vacation this summer.
3- What are you doing on the weekend?
4- Is Youssef visiting his cousins now?

5 Write an email:

From: hani@yahoo.com
To: ehab@gmail.com
Subject: Next Week and Summer Plans
Hi Ehab,
Next week I'm helping my parents and painting with my cousins. It's going to be busy! This summer, I'm staying home, not going on vacation. We can hang out in the city. What are you doing?
Take care,
Hani

Lessons (3-4)

1 Read and complete the text:

(1) part (2) turns (3) time (4) interest

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

(1) had a test (2) was sick
(3) give a presentation
(4) start a school newspaper

3 Read and complete the dialogue:

(1) half (2) leader
(3) joined (4) positions

4 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) Do you prefer talking or listening?
(2) Some people like working on their own.
(3) Being part of a team is great.
(4) A team of people has more ideas than one person.
(5) Did you take turns in your team?

5 Write a paragraph:
Teamwork makes us stronger together. When we join a team, we make new friends and share new ideas. It teaches us the importance of taking turns to speak and to listen. Good teamwork, like in a football game, requires us to work with others and understand our strengths and weaknesses. It's a great part of growing and succeeding.

Lesson (5)

1 Choose the correct answer:
(1) to (2) try (3) me
(4) him (5) told (6) said
(7) read (8) to (9) said
(10) help (11) not to (12) said
(13) to (14) told (15) go
(16) not to rush (17) use
(18) answer (19) told (20) put

2 Read the following text:
A- Choose the correct answer:
(1) poster (2) friend (3) arranged
B- Answer these questions:
(4) Fares had to do a project on the history of flight.
(5) The teacher asked Fares to try again, to make notes on what he read, and to look in books for more ideas.

3 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) Dad told me to go outside and play.
(2) Dalia asked me to help with her homework.
(3) Mom asked me to wash the dishes.
(4) Ms Manal told Rashad to open his book.

4 Write an email:
From: sama@school.net
To: nahla@hotmail.com
Subject: My Solar System Project
Hi Nahla,
I just finished a school project on the solar system. I had to make a 3D model of the planets. My dad helped me plan it out, and my friend Ali helped with the painting. In the end, it turned out great, and got an A!
Take care,
Sama

Lesson (6)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) competition (2) design
(3) museum (4) scientist

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) hard (2) ideas
(3) team (4) activities

3 Read and complete the text:
(1) independent (2) sociable
(3) club (4) collage

4 Choose the correct answer:
(1) visit (2) working (3) to visit
(4) taking (5) work (6) like
(7) studying (8) be (9) making
(10) to study (11) working (12) to do

5 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) What subjects does Noha like?
(2) I enjoy taking part in group activities.
(3) Does she like working in a team?
(4) We're designing a new robot.

6 Write your personal statement:
Hello, I'm Layla from Egypt. My favorite subjects are science, where I enjoy experiments, and history, where I learn about the past. I love playing basketball with my friends and reading books. In the future, I want to be an engineer because I like building and fixing things. I am working hard at school to make this happen someday.
Thank you for reading about me and my dreams!

Lesson (7)

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) desert (2) backpack
(3) packed (4) aid

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) adventure (2) oasis
(3) picnic (4) set

3 Put the words to make correct sentences:

(6) Samir asked Asser for his compass.
(7) When did Seleem pack his backpack?
(8) The Scouts knew where to go.
(9) Why did Seleem's group win a prize?
(10) Seleem was determined to win.

Unit (8) Test (5)

1 Listen and choose:

1- talk 2- turns 3- change 4- interest

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- follower 2- success
3- common 4- team

3 Read the following text and answer:

1- Science 2- Local 3- Seven
4- Exercises and games help us grow strong and keep us fit.
5- We learn Arabic to be able to tell others what we want and understand what others tell us.

4 The Reader:

A - Read and write:

1- True 2- False 3- True 4- True

B- Read and answer:

5- She suggested putting their written stories and their videos on the school website.
6- Later in the year, it did get easier for the newspaper team. They stopped printing the newspaper. They always did the news reports on video, and wrote their articles for the school website.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1-not to keep 2- am 3- try
4- working 5- asked 6- next

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- My science teacher told me to work hard.
2- What are you doing on the weekend?
3- Jumana isn't going to school next week.

7 Write an email:

From: manal@hotmail.com
To: jana@yahoo.com
Subject: My Study Plan for Finals
Hi Jana,
I hope you're doing well! I'm getting ready for my final exams by creating a study plan. Each day, I study a different subject. For hard topics, I ask my big sister for help. She's great at explaining things clearly. How's your prep going?
See you soon!
Manal

Review (4) Test (6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 .excited 2. history and math 3. two
4. money

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1. inventions 2. medicine 3. pain 4. mint

3 Read the following text and answer:

1- summer 2- driverless cars 3- safe
4- He'd feel anxious.
5- He is going to spend his vacation in Hurghada.

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. No 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. Yes

B- Read and answer the questions:

5. It was a bit unclear!
6. At the local deaf club.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- designed 2- as tall as 3- wouldn't have
4- Is 5- to prepare 6- to

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- What invention cleans dirty water?
2- We're going to the park tomorrow.
3- A filter straw can stop diseases.

7 Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nadine:

From: nesma@yahoo.com
To: nadine@gmail.com
Subject: My next summer vacation
Dear Nadine،
I'm very happy to write to you. I'm going to go to the Red Sea for summer vacation. I'll go with my family. We're going to dive and snorkel. We will take photographs and enjoy eating delicious fish. I hope you will join us. You'll not regret it.
Yours,
Nesma



Part 2 Final Revision

Revision on Unit 5

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) Astronomy (2) winds
(3) navigator (4) compass

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) travel (2) woke
(3) picked (4) dropped

3 Read and complete the text:
(1) athlete (2) along
(3) crutch (4) break

4 Read and complete the text:
(1) ski (2) inspired
(3) across (4) sailed

5 Read and complete the text:
(1) clean (2) gravity
(3) spaceship (4) astronauts

6 Read and complete the text:
(1) reef (2) away
(3) shadow (4) frightening

7 Read and complete the dialogue:
(1) wheelchair (2) challenge
(3) diving (4) set

8 Put the words in the correct order:
(1) Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman.
(2) How many books did Ibn Majid write?
(3) I went on a walking trip in Spain.
(4) What language did you pick up?
(5) You'll pick up some American phrases.
(6) Which world records did Omar Hegazy break?
(7) Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man.
(8) He had a good job as a banker.
(9) Who saw you off at the airport?
(10) He completed the swim in eight hours!
(11) How did he help sea travelers?
(12) Ehab gives talks to inspire others.
(13) Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player.
(14) Would you like to be an astronaut?
(15) Astronauts need to be physically strong.
(16) How do astronauts keep fit in space?
(17) Their sleeping bags are attached to a wall.
(18) What were the challenges of the trip?
(19) Astronauts are tested by doctors for their fitness.
(20) How is the spaceship cleaned?

9 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)
(1) navigator (2) Astronomy
(3) sailors (4) peninsula
(5) fascinated (6) sea
(7) explore (8) intelligent
(9) Fins (10) walk
(11) inspires (12) hold
(13) talented (14) do
(15) give (16) tidy
(17) ambitious (18) sailed
(19) chatting (20) whispered
(21) broke (22) follow

10 Choose the correct answer: (Phrasal Verbs)
(1) filling in (2) looked up
(3) wakes me up (4) dropped off
(5) put away (6) picked up
(7) figured out (8) see off
(9) in (10) off
(11) out (12) off
(13) up (14) away
(15) up (16) figured
(17) picks (18) put

11 Choose the correct answer: (Present Simple [passive])
(1) taught (2) tested
(3) attached (4) chosen
(5) teaching (6) Is
(7) is cleaned (8) written
(9) fixed (10) is baked
(11) are sold (12) delivers
(13) delivered (14) cleaned
(15) cleans (16) takes
(17) are taken (18) Are
(19) reviewed (20) Is

Unit (5) Test (1)

1 Listen and circle:
(1) diving (2) record
(3) set (4) inspires

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) seaman (2) Navigate
(3) fascinated (4) sailors

3 Read the text and answer:
(1) traveled (2) 1325
(3) six
(4) Because he was lonely.
(5) Sixty-four years.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
(1) Yes (2) No
(3) No (4) Yes
B. Answer the following questions:
(5) In Xi'an in China.
(6) Horses, wool, silver, olive oil, and items made from glass.

5 Choose the correct answer:
(1) watered (2) up
(3) returned (4) up
(5) away (6) answered

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1. Matthieu wrote a book about his adventures.
2. When they got closer, the deer ran away.
3. Ibn Majid wanted to explore the seas and oceans.

7 Write an email:
From: hosam@hotmail.com
To: basim@school.net
Subject: A visit to a famous place
Dear Basim,
How are you? I'm writing to tell you about my visit to a famous place yesterday. I went to visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. I went with my family. We took our snacks and camera with us. The views were amazing. We took many photos with tourists there. What about you? Did you visit any famous place before?
Yours,
Hosam

Revision on Unit 6

1 Read and complete the text:
(1) director (2) prizes
(3) proud (4) sports

2 Read and complete the text:
(1) Grades (2) do
(3) calculations (4) articles

3 Read and complete the text:
(1) journalist (2) meetings
(3) press (4) get

4 Read and complete the text:
(1) journalists (2) breaking
(3) reports (4) editor

5 Read and complete the text:
(1) got (2) protect
(3) investigate (4) cleaned

6 Read and complete the text:
(1) sold (2) decorated
(3) instruments (4) choir

7 Read and complete the dialogue:
(1) Well done (2) awesome
(3) skills (4) luck
(5) challenges

8 Put the words in the correct order:
1. Newspapers are made on a printing press.
2. Every year, we have a garage sale at our school.
3. He lives in a small house called a hutch.
4. Does your class like to raise money for local charities?
5. They are tracked so they don't get lost.
6. Is the area designed to be safe enough?
7. The cheetahs aren't watched all the time.
8. Who doesn't love a giant panda?
9. I'm visiting my grandparents that weekend.
10. As you can see, my job is very interesting.
11. I love my job because I love sport.
12. Were any of the videos posted by you?
13. No, I won't be able to come.
14. It was a peaceful place near a river.
15. I'm so proud of all of you.

9 Choose the correct answer:
(1) volunteer (2) Equipment
(3) newspaper (4) editor
(5) hutch (6) responsible
(7) vaccination (8) International
(9) Breaking news (10) journalism

(11) sociable (12) staff
(13) investigate (14) promise
(15) barn (16) fall
(17) summer (18) keeps

10 Choose the correct answer:
(1) are written (2) organized
(3) washing (4) washed
(5) sent (6) liked
(7) was prepared (8) prepared
(9) be watched (10) were sent
(11) painted (12) will be decorated
(13) were put (14) Were
(15) was destroyed (16) built
(17) was sold (18) solved
(19) finished (20) were
(21) solved (22) will be built
(23) finished (24) Will
(25) sent (26) be washed
(27) brother's (28) teacher's
(29) sister's (30) student's

Unit (6) Test (2)

1 Listen and circle:
(1) disappeared (2) brought
(3) pleased (4) tracked

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
(1) fantastic (2) invite
(3) pity (4) bad

3 Read the text and answer:
(1) there is no air (2) Plants
(3) space cities (4) In space.
(5) Life in the future will be different from present-day life.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
(1)No (2) No
(3)Yes (4) Yes
B. Read and answer the questions:
(5) Hatem
(6) She liked doing paintings and pottery outside of school.

5 Choose the correct answer:
(1) Is (2) was written
(3) will (4) is eaten
(5) finished (6) Ali's

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1. Cheetahs are the fastest animals in the world.
2. Why did travelers use camels in the past?
3. People didn't protect the habitats of pandas.

7 Write a paragraph:
We had a sports day at our school. We played football, volleyball, basketball, and did running and jumping. It was a fun day of sports and working together. We planned the activities and everyone participated. We enjoyed playing different games and had a great time.

Revision on Unit 7

1 Read and complete the text:
1- encourage 2- safe 3- lights 4- paths

2 Read and complete the text:
1- problems 2- filter 3- bacteria
4- prevented

3 Read and complete the text:
1- birdfeeders 2- gatepost 3- knot
4- birdseed

4 Read and complete the text:
1- teeth 2- toothpaste 3- mint 4- good

5 Read and complete the text:
1- fit 2- environment 3- paths 4- Cyclists

6 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- competition 2- magazines 3- machine
4- Ancient

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Wael asked his teacher to help him.
2- Mrs Hala told him to read page 48.
3- Mom told Tarek to put away his bike.
4- Hani asked me to close the door.
5- Filter straws have prevented diseases in many countries.
6- I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.
7- What is the interactive exhibition about?
8- I wonder what a time machine would look like.
9- What type of fish does the camera look like?
10- Where does Mazen decide to go?
11- Driverless cars don't need a driver to control them.

12- We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today.
13- What is the school project about?
14- They've existed for thousands of years.
15- They understood how the human body worked.
16- A plow was used to dig and turn the soil.
17- The Ancient Egyptians used animals to help them.
18- What is Mr Hamdy using to help him walk?

8 Choose the correct answer:

1- edible 2- filter 3- decompose
4- prevent 5- decompose 6- dirty
7- stores 8- driverless 9- Interactive
10- planets 11- direct 12- mixed
13- pain 14- toothpaste 15- Plastic
16- creative 17- healthy 18- cover

9 Choose the correct answer:

1- went / we'd visit 2- would / were
3- wouldn't / they had
4- we stopped / wouldn't
5- would learn / could learn
6- would / could 7- would 8- lived
9- would 10- found 11- wouldn't
12- attended 13- hadn't 14- would
15- could 16- wouldn't 17- Would
18- asked 19- could 20- helped 21- would

10 Choose the correct answer:

1- as 2- as 3- fast 4- as funny as
5- experienced 6- isn't 7- as delicious as
8- as 9- high 10- cute

Unit (7) Test (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- cycling 2- glows 3- solar 4- cyclists

2 Read and complete the text:

1- fossil 2- greenhouse 3- climate 4- tiles

3 Read the text and answer:

1- harmful 2- breathe 3- useful
4- Pollution represents a significant threat to our planet, harming habitats, wildlife, and even our own health.
5- Simple steps like reducing waste, recycling, and using eco-friendly products can help reduce pollution.

4 The Reader

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- Yes 2- No 3- No 4-Yes

B- Answer the following questions:

5-As ships were faster and could travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road. They could also carry more cargo.
6- Cotton, rice, and onions.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- wouldn't 2- would 3- exciting
4- practiced 5- as 6- lived

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- The Ancient Egyptians created an early type of ink.
2- Have you ever been inside a planetarium?
3- Some animals get trapped in the plastic.

7 Write an email:

From: ahmad@gmail.com
To: adel@school.net
Subject: A book I read about the Ancient Egyptians
Hi Adel,
I need to tell you about book I read about the Ancient Egyptians. We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention! For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked and used herbs to stop pain and diseases.
Talk to you soon,
Ahmad

Revision on Unit 8

1 Read and complete the text:

1- team 2- activities 3- independent 4- take

2 Read and complete the text:

1- flight 2- check 3- notes 4- planned

3 Read and complete the text:

1- oasis 2- Scouts 3- leader 4- determined

4 Read and complete the text:
1- taking 2- collage 3- National 4- career

5 Read and complete the text:
1- map 2- allowed 3- blew 4- ripped

6 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- shopping 2- next 3- vacation 4- summer

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Hazem has to do an experiment for a science competition.
2- Injy is an independent person.
3- When do you need to be determined؟
4- We both smiled and waved at her.
5- Are you going on vacation this summer؟
6- I'm staying with my cousins next week.
7- Getting enough sleep will give you more energy.
8- What are you afraid of؟
9- Every team needs a leader and followers.
10- My mom asked me to try my best.
11- How was the football game last weekend؟
12- Do some research on the internet.
13- How did Fares solve his problem؟
14- I'm competing in a science competition next week.
15- I'd like to be a scientist or an inventor.

8 Choose the correct answer:
1- independent 2- determined 3- anxious
4- patient 5- afraid 6- embarrassed
7- determined 8- disappoint 9- row
10- worn 11- took part 12- take time
13- took an interest 14- take turns
15- take 16- Leaders 17- Followers
18- topic 19- oasis 20- blows

9 Choose the correct answer:
1- flying 2- aren't 3- giving 4- is 5- are
6- starting 7- is 8- is 9- Are
10- staying 11- going 12- doing

10 Choose the correct answer:
1- Don't 2- me 3- asked 4- said
5- asked 6- asked 7- said 8- told
9- lend 10- asked 11- said

11 Choose the correct answer:
1- swimming 2- like 3- playing 4- go
5- watching 6- to 7- reading 8- traveling
9- attend 10- playing 11- watching
12- like 13- cooking 14- taking
15- read 16- expressing

Unit (8) Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- history 2- notes 3- break 4- planned

2 Read and complete the text:
1- trying 2- determined 3- experiment
4- anxious

3 Read the text and answer:
1- hobby 2- older 3- near
4- He is a businessman.
5- The best thing about the holiday was the people.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):
1-No 2- Yes 3- No 4- No
B- Answer the following questions:
5- It was a bit unclear.
6- Tarek

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- having 2- exploring 3- told
4- helping 5- tomorrow 6- volunteer

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Have you ever been part of a team؟
2- Reem's dad was helping her with her math homework.
3- What did Asser take out of his bag?

7 Write a paragraph:
"My summer vacation"
I'm so excited about my summer vacation! I'm going to Alexandria with my family. We'll have a great time! I can't wait to play and swim in the sea. We'll also play fun games on the sandy beach. At night, we'll have nice movie nights together while eating popcorn. And guess what? We're going to visit the amazing Citadel of Qaitbay and explore the fascinating Library of Alexandria. It's going to be an awesome holiday with my loved ones, and we will make unforgettable memories!





Part 3 Revision Tests

Revision Test (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- six 2- share 3- team 4- taking

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- airport 2- flight 3- parked 4- passports

3 Read the text and answer:
1- clever 2- kings 3- different
4- They were built thousands of years ago.
5- Because they are part of the world's history.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1- Yes 2- No 3- Yes 4- Yes
B- Read and answer the questions:
5- To put the articles and the videos on the school website.
6- They stopped printing the newspaper. They always did the news reports on video, and wrote their articles for the school website.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- helping 2- work 3- killed
4- Laila's 5- be 6- had

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Dad told me to go outside and play.
2- Can we look for ideas online?
3- We aren't going on vacation this summer.

7 Write an email:
From: saif@yahoo.com
To: khaled@gmail.com
Subject: My plans for next week and the summer
Dear Khaled،
I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about my plans for next week and the summer. Guess what? Next week, I'm going to visit my grandparents. We'll have so much fun together! We'll play games, go to the park, and have ice cream. As for the summer, my family and I are going to the beach! I can't wait to build sandcastles, swim in the ocean, and eat delicious seafood. It's going to be an amazing time! I can't wait to hear about your summer plans, too.
See you soon!
Saif

Revision Test (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- fuels 2- Burning 3- bad 4- carbon

2 Read and complete the text:
1- bacteria 2- prevent 3- Store
4- decompose

3 Read the text and answer:
1- beach 2- El Fayoum 3- similar
4- They may go to the North Coast.
5- They visited the Valley of the Kings and the High Dam.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1- No 2- Yes 3- No 4- Yes
B- Read and answer the questions:
5- Because people traded silk between China in the past and countries we now know as Europe, in the west.
6- Because they could travel long distances in hot, dry weather.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- as smooth as 2- like 3- be
4- Gameela's 5- designed 6- Are

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The children go to an interactive exhibition.
2- What are you doing on the weekend?
3- Dalia asked me to help with her homework.

7 Write a paragraph:
"A visit to the planetarium"
Last weekend, I went to the planetarium with my family, and it was so cool! We learned a lot about space and the planets. We saw a big screen where they showed us the stars, galaxies, and even the astronauts in space. It felt like we were floating among the stars! We also learned about the different planets in our solar system. My favorite part was seeing the huge model of the moon. It was an amazing experience, and I can't wait to go back again!

Revision Test (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1-decompose 2- ocean 3- Cutlery 4- edible

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- awesome 2- done 3- pleased 4- Better

3 Read the text and answer:
1- two 2- interesting 3- finished
4- Four friends.
5- Each team tried to cross the other goal line with the ball.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1- No 2- Yes 3- No 4- No
B- Read and answer the questions:
5- When they were in Grade 6.
6- Hatem was the editor.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- working 2- is 3- protected
4- entered 5- answer 6- modern as

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Mazen and his friends see a driverless car.
2- Mom asked me to wash the dishes.
3- When is Yaseen cooking the meal?

7 Write an email:
From: doha@school.net
To: asmaa@gmail.com
Subject: The visit my class made to the science museum
Hello Asmaa,
I hope you're doing great! I wanted to share all the excitement about our class visit to the science museum. It was incredible! We saw so many cool things there. We explored interactive exhibits about dinosaurs, space, and even robots. I loved the planetarium show where we learned about the stars and galaxies. It was so much fun! I can't wait to tell you more about it when we meet.
Take care,
Doha

Revision Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- independent 2- making 3- art 4- collage

2 Read and complete the text:
1- concert 2- instruments 3- choir
4- presentation

3 Read the text and answer:
1- expensive 2- Blankets 3- present
4- Many of the things we used in the past.
5- Our factories sell their products to different countries in Africa, Asia and even in Europe.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1- Yes 2- No 3- Yes 4- Yes
B- Read and answer the questions:
5- It was built to make a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea.
6- It connected Port Said, on the Mediterranean Sea, with the city of Suez.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- told 2- posted 3- would
4- Sameh's 5- expensive 6- is staying

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Is Youssef visiting his cousins now?
2- The camera can take photos under the water.
3- Ms Manal told Rashad to open his book.

7 Write a paragraph:
"The invention of "filter straws""
There is an amazing invention called "filter straws"! These special straws are made to solve a big problem: dirty water! The filter straws are magical because they can remove bacteria and make the water clean and safe to drink. With these straws, people can prevent diseases and stay healthy. It is like having a superhero in your pocket! Everyone loves filter straws because they make a big difference in people's lives. It is helping people all around the world have access to clean water.

Revision Test (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- concert 2- sixty 3- orchestra 4- choir

2 Read and complete the text:
1- desert 2- backpack 3- packed 4- aid

3 Read the text and answer:
1- 60 days 2- island 3- reading
4- Because there was a terrible storm.
5- While they were sitting by the sea, they saw a ship coming near them. It took them home again.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1- No 2- Yes 3- No 4- No
B- Read and answer the questions:
5- It was a bit unclear. 6- Tarek

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- Is 2- didn't 3- to
4- done 5- hot as 6- making

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Did you take turns in your team?
2- It was a peaceful place near a river.
3- Cycling is a good way to travel.

7 Write an email:
From: hoda@school.net
To: nesma@gmail.com
Subject: Remembering the fun games of childhood!
Dear Nesma,
I hope you're doing well! I wanted to share some memories of the games I used to enjoy when I was younger. One of my favorites was hide-and-seek. I was really good at finding the best hiding spots! I also loved playing tag and racing my friends in the park. Oh, and let's not forget about the board games. Those were so much fun! What games did you enjoy when you were younger? I can't wait to hear your stories!
Best regards,
Nesma

Revision Test (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- talented 2- wheelchair 3- diving
4- world

2 Read and complete the text:
1- burning 2- shade 3- storm 4- space

3 Read the text and answer:
1- in a lift 2- lotus 3- popular
4- It is 63 years old. 5- They can see the Nile, all of Cairo, Giza and Helwan.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1- Yes 2- No 3- No 4- Yes
B- Read and answer the questions:
5- It started from Xi'an, a large, rich city in China.
6- Horses, wool, silver, olive oil and items made from glass.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- Would 2- not to rush 3- will be published
4- would 5- as clever as 6- am cooking

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- We use plastic in our everyday lives.
2- What did the Ancient Egyptians invent?
3- Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago.

7 Write a paragraph:
"An amazing adventure",

Last summer, my family and I went on an amazing adventure to the mountains! We hiked through beautiful trails and climbed to the top of a mountain. It was challenging, but I learned so many skills, like determination and teamwork. Some parts were difficult, especially when we had to climb steep rocks, but we encouraged each other and made it through. My favorite part was reaching the top and seeing the incredible view. The biggest challenge was staying safe and making sure we had enough food and water. It was a wonderful experience that I'll never forget!

Revision Test (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- journalist 2- newspaper 3- English
4- university

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- competition 2- history 3- machine
4- inventions

3 Read the text and answer:
1- communication 2- modern 3- keep
4- Computers are important because they are flexible, accurate and can store lots of information in their memory.
5- Programs tell the computer how to store and control electronic information.

4 The Reader

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes 2- No 3- No 4- Yes

B- Read and answer the questions:

5- Because ships were faster and could travel farther than vehicle and animals on the road. They could also carry more cargo.

6- Cotton, rice, and onions.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- useful as 2- are staying 3- was
4- destroyed 5- said 6- invented

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area.
2- Why does Rania's mom make koshari?
3- Mom and I are putting away my clothes.

7 Write an email:

From: reem@gmail.com
To: dina@yahoo.com
Subject: The dangers of pollution and how we can make a difference!
Hi Dina،
I hope this email finds you well! I recently read an article about pollution, and it was shocking. Pollution is really dangerous for our environment! It harms plants, animals, and even us. But we can make a difference! We can reduce pollution by recycling, using less plastic, and saving energy. Planting trees and participating in clean-up activities can help too. It's important for us to spread awareness and encourage others to join in. Together, we can protect our planet and create a cleaner, healthier world for everyone!
See you soon,
Reem

Revision Test (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- Morocco 2- swimming 3- picked
4- wonderful

2 Read and complete the text:

1- leg 2- athletes 3- training 4- record

3 Read the text and answer:

1- computer 2- eleven 3- easy
4- Planes, trains, buses and cars.
5- Telephones help us contact our friends and relatives.

4 The Reader

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No 2- No 3- Yes 4- Yes

B- Read and answer the questions:

5- Hatem

6- She liked doing paintings and pottery outside of school.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- are 2- be sent 3- old
4- Abdullah's 5- me 6- wouldn't

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- My dad wakes my sister up at 7 o'clock in the morning.
2- What type of fish does the camera look like?
3- Would you like to be a sailor?

7 Write a paragraph:

"A visit to a famous place"

Last month, I went on a fantastic visit to Luxor Temple! My family and I went together, and it was so much fun. We packed our backpacks for the trip. We went by train. When we arrived, I was amazed by the beauty of the temple. The massive statues and tall columns were amazing. Inside, we saw beautiful symbols on the walls and learned about the Ancient Egyptian gods. It felt like going back in time! It was an unforgettable experience, and I can't wait to visit more historical places in the future.

Revision Test (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- sale 2- Volunteers 3- care 4- toys

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- half 2- leader 3- joined 4- positions

3 Read the text and answer:

1- ten 2- more than 3- continues
4- Football was very different when people began to play it. All the men of one village played against all the men of another village. The match went on all day.
5- To make players obey the rules.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1- No 2- No 3- No 4- No
B- Read and answer the questions:
5- It started from Xi'an, a large, rich city in China. 6- Because people sometimes tried to steal money or goods.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- going 2- be enjoyed 3- aren't
4- Amal's 5- tracked 6- go

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Her homework won't be finished this evening.
2- Does Sylvia like living in Egypt?
3- They are looking up the route to the beach.

7 Write an email:
From: salma@gmail.com
To: farida@hotmail.com
Subject: Making a difference through charity work!
Hi Farida,
I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about the charity work we're doing at school. It's so amazing! I volunteer to help my friends who struggle with reading and writing. We practice together, and I help them improve. It feels really good to see their progress! We also do community service projects like cleaning up the park and donating clothes to those in need. It's important to help others and make a positive impact. I'm proud to be part of such a caring and giving community!
Take care, and let's make a difference together!
Salma

Revision Test (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- travel 2- seaman 3- sailing 4- sailors

2 Read and complete the text:
1- part 2- turns 3- time 4- interest

3 Read the text and answer:
1- Paris 2- 1812 3- worse
4- He invented a way of reading for blind people.
5- He was 43 years old.

4 The Reader
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
1- No 2- Yes 3- Yes 4- Yes
B- Read and answer the questions:
5- It was a bit unclear.
6- In the local deaf club.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- picked 2- not to 3- Is
4- were put 5- entered 6- as funny

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Cheetahs are the fastest animals in the world.
2- What animals did Sameh and his family have?
3- Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman.

7 Write a paragraph:
"A story about one of Ibn Majid's sea journeys in the past"

Once upon a time, there was a famous sailor named Ibn Majid. He set off on a great sea journey on a big ship with his brave sailors. They sailed towards India. During the voyage, they encountered a storm that caused them to lose their way. But Ibn Majid had a special compass that helped him navigate. With its guidance, they found a lost ship and rescued its crew. Ibn Majid's knowledge of the sea and his compass helped them all find their way back on the right route. They returned home pleased, their hearts filled with pride and gratitude for their courageous journey.